

hugo

# JAPANESE

in THREE MONTHS



www.irlanguage.com  
**IR**.com  
 Language  
 مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان

全国銀行協会連合会  
 THE FEDERATION OF BANKERS ASSOCIATIONS OF JAPAN  
 社団法人 東京銀行協会  
 THE TOKYO BANKERS ASSOCIATION, INC.  
 東京手形交換所  
 THE TOKYO HANDELS EXCHANGE

## SIMPLIFIED LANGUAGE COURSE

Hugo's Simplified System

# Japanese in Three Months

John Breen

[www.irlanguage.com](http://www.irlanguage.com)



Hugo's Language Books





|   |     |   |     |
|---|-----|---|-----|
| Chapter 12  | 128 | Chapter 18  | 187 |
| Like/dislike  |     | If ... clauses  |     |
| Want (someone) to do  |     | Some related expressions                                |     |
| More on <i>wa/ga</i>  |     | Exercise & conversations                                |     |
| More on <i>naru/narimasu</i>  |     |   |     |
| More on <i>yō ni</i>  |     | Chapter 19  | 196 |
| Exercise & conversations  |     | The passive, the causative and the<br>passive causative |     |
| Chapter 13  | 139 | Exercise & conversations                                |     |
| Appearance: <i>appears to be/</i><br><i>looks like</i>                      |     | Chapter 20  | 206 |
| Feel, sense, taste, smell, etc.   |     | Summary of informal and<br>honorific language           |     |
| Exercise & conversations  |     | Conversations   |     |
| Chapter 14  | 147 | Key to Exercises  | 215 |
| Relative clauses, simple and<br>complex                                     |     | Key to Conversations                                    | 221 |
| Someone/something   |     | Mini-dictionary:<br>English–Japanese                    | 238 |
| Nobody/nothing  |     | Mini-dictionary:<br>Japanese–English                    | 251 |
| Anybody/anything  |     | Appendix 1  | 267 |
| Exercise & conversations  |     | Appendix 2  | 270 |
| Chapter 15  | 157 |   |     |
| Must (not)/may (not)/can (not)  |     |   |     |
| Some uses of <i>koto</i> and <i>no</i> with<br>verbs                        |     |   |     |
| Exercise & conversations  |     |   |     |
| Chapter 16  | 168 |   |     |
| Comparing things  |     |   |     |
| Superlatives  |     |   |     |
| Exercise & conversations  |     |   |     |
| Chapter 17  | 177 |   |     |
| Some expressions of time: <i>before,</i><br><i>after, while, when, etc.</i> |     |   |     |
| Exercise & conversations  |     |   |     |

## Introduction

Japanese has a reputation as an extremely difficult language to learn, if not an impossible one. Yet there is no doubt that the difficulties are greatly overstated. For example, in studying the language you'll encounter few problems with the pronunciation. Individual Japanese sounds are easy to master. Moreover, Japanese, unlike Chinese (with which it shares no common roots) does not have awkward sound combinations, nor does it have tricky tonal variations. Japanese is also without the stress accents found in English. It is spoken rather in a monotone. Grammatically, Japanese is altogether different from English and other European languages (and indeed from Chinese), but the simple explanations and the abundant examples that have been provided will enable you to grasp with the minimum of effort the special grammatical features of the language. By the end of the course, you will be able to understand – and to be understood – in a wide variety of situations, and you will also have some thousand items of useful vocabulary under your belt.

In this book, all the Japanese is given for convenience in romanized form. While the Japanese are, of course, able to read their own language in this romanized form (*rōmaji* they call it), they do in fact use three quite different writing systems: *hiragana*, *katakana* and *kanji*. Appendix 1 gives an introduction to *hiragana*, while Appendix 2 contains a selection of the more common *katakana* and *kanji* which the visitor is likely to see in the streets of Japan.

Something needs to be said about the format of the course. The examples used to illustrate grammatical points are given for the most part with the English first and the Japanese second. Experiments suggest that the traditional method, where the language being learnt comes before the translation in English, slows down the learning process.



The method adopted here, however, will enable you to learn quickly what can and what cannot be said in Japanese. Where possible, related grammatical items are grouped together, and at the end of each group you will find a translation exercise. There is another type of exercise too: occasionally you will be asked to 'check that you can form ...' (say, the past tense of a selection of verbs). This exercise requires you to cover up the answers, which are provided in the right-hand column of the page, and to form the past tense unaided. You can then check your answers against those printed. Each chapter closes with a conversational dialogue together with notes that relate to particular points arising within this. The conversations cover grammatical items recently explained, while the notes amplify those explanations where necessary and provide translations of 'difficult' words or phrases. For a chapter to be considered completed, go over all the examples and exercises a second time, covering up the appropriate columns to make sure that you can translate confidently from and into both languages. All the vocabulary is placed for convenience at the end of the book, but it may be a useful exercise to compile your own vocabulary lists for each individual chapter and commit the new words to memory.

The final thing to say is that the single greatest problem in learning the language is in overcoming the 'culture gap'. Japanese is spoken by people from a social and cultural background entirely different from our own, and you will undoubtedly find that the learning process is made much easier if you take the trouble to read some introductory books on Japanese society and culture. Joy Hendry's *Understanding Japanese Society* is recommended as a standard and readily obtainable work. It contains chapters on a variety of subjects, including one on the language.

## Abbreviations

In the vocabulary lists and occasionally in the chapters you will see the following conventional abbreviations:

|             |   |
|-------------|---|
| <i>adj.</i> | adjective   |
| <i>adv.</i> | adverb  |
| <i>lit.</i> | literally   |
| <i>n.</i>   | noun  |
| <i>vt.</i>  | transitive verb<br>(one that takes a direct object) |
| <i>vi.</i>  | intransitive verb<br>(one that does not)            |

*J*: Throughout the chapters, where model sentences are given in English and Japanese, the English sentence will sometimes contain within parentheses a letter *J*: followed by more English. This *J*: means 'the Japanese treat this in the following way' – the phrase or word formation that comes after it will show you how.

A ... B: Where these letters appear underlined, they stand for a noun and/or an adjective, etc. which for simplicity's sake has been omitted from the construction being explained.

*A* and *B* (in italics) will be found against the English model sentences that represent a 'question and answer' routine or where the Japanese for *B* is constructed in a way that is dependent on *A*.

In the conversations, initial letters indicate who is speaking.



# Pronunciation

Japanese sounds, unlike those in English, are best thought of as being composed of syllables rather than of vowels and consonants. The table below gives you all the possible individual syllables in Japanese. You will see that these syllables may combine to give a number of other sounds. As a first exercise, practise the sounds in the table – after you've read notes 1–10 and listened to the pronunciation tape (if you've got our Cassette Course):

| Column: | 1  | 2   | 3   | 4  | 5  |
|---------|----|-----|-----|----|----|
| Row 1   | a  | i   | u   | e  | o  |
| 2       | ka | ki  | ku  | ke | ko |
| 3       | ga | gi  | gu  | ge | go |
| 4       | sa | shi | su  | se | so |
| 5       | za | ji  | zu  | ze | zo |
| 6       | ta | chi | tsu | te | to |
| 7       | da | ji  | zu  | de | do |
| 8       | na | ni  | nu  | ne | no |
| 9       | ha | hi  | fu  | he | ho |
| 10      | ba | bi  | bu  | be | bo |
| 11      | pa | pi  | pu  | pe | po |
| 12      | ma | mi  | mu  | me | mo |
| 13      | ya | –   | yu  | –  | yo |
| 14      | ra | ri  | ru  | re | ro |
| 15      | wa | –   | –   | –  | n  |

- 1) The 'a' sound of the syllables in column 1 (a, ka, ga, sa etc.) is pronounced much the same as the vowel sound in the French word *chat*, somewhere between the 'a' in *cat* and the 'u' in *cut*.
- 2) The 'i' sound of the syllables in column 2 (i, ki, gi, shi etc.) is pronounced rather similar to the vowel sound in *wit*.

- 3) The 'u' sound of the syllables in column 3 (u, ku, gu, su etc.) is pronounced similar to the vowel sound in *could*.
- 4) The 'e' sound of the syllables in column 4 (e, ke, ge, se etc.) is pronounced similar to the vowel sound in *get*.
- 5) The 'o' sound of the syllables in column 5 (o, ko, go, so etc.) is pronounced similar to the vowel sound in *cot*.
- 6) The 'g' sound of the syllables of row 3 is generally pronounced hard as in *get*, but sometimes soft as in *sing*.
- 7) The 'n' sound of the syllables of row 8 is pronounced as in *no*.
- 8) The one consonant in Japanese, **n**, comes only at the end of a syllable; it is pronounced 'ng' as in *sing*.
- 9) The 'f' sound in the syllable **fu** (row 9, column 3) is not hard like the English 'f' in *flip*. It is much lighter and is made by blowing gently through slightly parted lips.
- 10) The 'r' sound in the syllables of row 14 is not heard in English. It is a sound which lies somewhere between the English 'r' and 'l', and is often rather close to a 'd' sound. It is made by tapping with the tip of the tongue against the gum behind the top front teeth.

## Vowel combinations and other points

More sounds can be created in Japanese by combining certain syllables:

- a) By combining syllables in column 1 (a, ka, ga etc.) with i (column 2, row 1) you get **ai** (and **kai, gai** etc.), which is pronounced similar to the English *eye*.
- b) By combining syllables in column 4 (e, ke, ge etc.) with i you get **ei** (and **kei, gei** etc.), which is pronounced similar to the vowel sound in *wait*.

- c) By combining syllables of column 2 (**ki, gi, shi** etc.) with those of row 13 (**ya, yu, yo**) you get **k'ya, g'ya, sh'ya** etc.; **k'yu, g'yu, sh'yu** etc.; **k'yo, g'yo, sh'yo** etc. For convenience, these sounds will be written without the apostrophe: **kya, kyu, kyo** etc.
- d) Syllables of any column may combine with row 1 of the *same* column to make a 'long syllable': e.g. **a, ka, ga** plus **a** gives **aa, kaa, gaa**. Conventionally, such long syllables are transcribed with what is known as a macron: **ā, kā, gā** etc.; **ī, kī, gī** etc.; **ō, kō, gō** etc. They are pronounced as a single unbroken sound twice the length of the corresponding short syllable. N.B.: It is very common for foreign speakers of Japanese to make the mistake of not heeding long vowel sounds when they occur. This can often totally alter the meaning of the word – for example, **o-ba-san** means 'aunt' whereas **o-bā-san** means 'grandmother'.
- e) Something needs to be said about what appear from the romanized Japanese to be double consonants, as in **katta** ('bought'). Strictly speaking, these are not double consonants. They are in fact a type of combined syllable (see Appendix 1, page 268). However, here it has been thought sensible to follow the conventional romanization and render them as 'double consonants'. As far as pronunciation is concerned, where the 'consonant' is doubled it must be held for an extra beat. This is not dissimilar to the effect created in English with words like *home-made* or *Ben-Nevis*. Failure to observe the pronunciation of these 'double consonants' is another common error made by the non-native speaker, and can again totally alter the meaning of a word – for example, **katta** means 'bought' whereas **kata** means 'shoulder'.
- f) Finally, a word on devoicing. The 'i' sound in the syllable **shi** is devoiced, so that **shita** ('below', 'under') is pronounced 'shta'. Also, the 'u' sound is often devoiced in the syllables of column 3, such as **ku** and **gu**, but particularly **su**: the style of Japanese wrestling known as **sumō** is pronounced 'smō', and **desu** (the verb 'to be') is generally pronounced 'dess'.

## Pronunciation practice (1)

Practise the following words (with the aid of the cassettes if you have them), not forgetting the few rules given above, and taking care not to impose English rhythm on the words – particularly those with which you may be familiar:

|                               |                                 |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <b>Ikeda</b> (family name)    | <b>shashin</b> (photo)          |
| <b>karate</b>                 | <b>shujutsu</b> (operation)     |
| <b>sake</b> (rice wine)       | <b>shūkan</b> (custom)          |
| <b>Tanaka</b> (family name)   | <b>o-ba-san</b> (aunt)          |
| <b>Nagasaki</b>               | <b>o-bā-san</b> (grandmother)   |
| <b>Hitachi</b>                | <b>Kyōto</b>                    |
| <b>Hiroshima</b>              | <b>shōgun</b>                   |
| <b>yama</b> (mountain)        | <b>sumō</b>                     |
| <b>shita</b> (beneath, below) | <b>sukiyaki</b> (meat dish)     |
| <b>Matsushita</b>             | <b>Kyūshū</b>                   |
| <b>kudasai</b> (please)       | <b>Tōkyō</b>                    |
| <b>geisha</b>                 | <b>dōjo</b> (martial arts hall) |
| <b>samurai</b>                | <b>ana</b> (hole)               |
| <b>hai</b> (yes)              | <b>anna</b> (that sort of)      |
| <b>rei</b> (example)          | <b>kata</b> (shoulder)          |
| <b>kyonen</b> (last year)     | <b>katta</b> (bought)           |

## Pronunciation practice (2)

In Japanese there exist quite a few words of foreign origin, and it is essential that you should pronounce these in the Japanese way. Below is a selection of the more common imported words:

|                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>apāto</b> (apartment)      | <b>tabako</b> (cigarettes)       |
| <b>uisukī</b> (whisky)        | <b>tēburu</b> (table)            |
| <b>karēraisu</b> (curry rice) | <b>depāto</b> (department store) |
| <b>kōhī</b> (coffee)          | <b>sunakku bā</b> (bar)          |
| <b>koppu</b> (cup)            | <b>hoteru</b> (hotel)            |
| <b>sakkā</b> (soccer)         | <b>fuirumu</b> (film for camera) |
| <b>shatsu</b> (shirt)         | <b>miruku</b> (milk)             |
| <b>takushī</b> (taxi)         | <b>basu</b> (bus)                |
| <b>naifu</b> (knife)          | <b>fuōku</b> (fork)              |

# Chapter 1

In this chapter, you will be consolidating your understanding of the pronunciation points while learning some basic greetings and conversational phrases. Read the following out loud, listen to the cassette if you have it, and refer back to the previous pages if you still have doubts about pronunciation.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| A: <i>What is your name?</i>                 | <b>O-namae wa nan to<br/>osshaimasu ka.</b>           |
| B: <i>My name's Tanaka.</i>                  | <b>Tanaka to mōshimasu.</b>                           |
| A: <i>Hello, Yumiko!</i>                     | <b>Konnichi wa, Yumiko-san!</b>                       |
| B: <i>Hello!</i>                             | <b>Konnichi wa.</b>                                   |
| A: <i>Good morning, Mr Tanaka!</i>           | <b>O-hayō gozaimasu,<br/>Tanaka-san!</b>              |
| B: <i>Good morning, Mrs Brown!</i>           | <b>O-hayō gozaimasu,<br/>Buraun-san!</b>              |
| A: <i>Good evening, Sir!</i>                 | <b>Sensei<sup>2</sup>, konban wa.</b>                 |
| B: <i>Good evening.</i>                      | <b>Konban wa.</b>                                     |
| A: <i>Good night, Kunio.</i>                 | <b>O-yasumi nasai, Kunio-kun<sup>3</sup>.</b>         |
| B: <i>Good night.</i>                        | <b>O-yasumi nasai.</b>                                |
| A: <i>Goodbye!</i>                           | <b>Sayōnara.</b>                                      |
| B: <i>Goodbye!</i>                           | <b>Sayōnara.</b>                                      |
| A: <i>Excuse me<br/>(but I must be off).</i> | <b>Shitsurei shimasu.</b>                             |
| B: <i>Goodbye!</i>                           | <b>Sayōnara.</b>                                      |
| A: <i>Pleased to meet you.</i>               | <b>Hajimemashite.</b>                                 |
| B: <i>Pleased to meet you too.</i>           | <b>Hajimemashite, dōzo<br/>yoroshiku<sup>4</sup>.</b> |

|   |   |
|---|---|
| A: <i>How are you?</i>                          | <b>Go-kigen ikaga desu ka.</b>                    |
| B: <i>Very well thank you.</i>                  | <b>O-kagesama de.</b>                             |
| A: <i>How are you?</i>                          | <b>Genki<sup>5</sup>?</b>                         |
| B: <i>Fine.</i>                                 | <b>Genki yo.</b>                                  |
| A: <i>It's been a long time,<br/>hasn't it?</i> | <b>O-hisashiburi desu ne<sup>6</sup>.</b>         |
| B: <i>Yes, it's been a long time.</i>           | <b>O-hisashiburi desu ne.</b>                     |
| A: <i>Thank you very much.</i>                  | <b>Dōmo arigatō gozaimasu<br/>(gozaimashita).</b> |
| B: <i>It's a pleasure.</i>                      | <b>Dō itashimashite.</b>                          |
| A: <i>Thank you.</i>                            | <b>Arigatō gozaimasu<br/>(gozaimashita).</b>      |
| B: <i>No, thank you.</i>                        | <b>Kochira koso.</b>                              |
| A: <i>Thanks.</i>                               | <b>Dōmo.</b>                                      |
| B: <i>Not at all.</i>                           | <b>Īe.</b>  |
| A: <i>I'm sorry.</i>                            | <b>Gomen nasai.</b>                               |
| B: <i>That's all right.</i>                     | <b>Īi desu.</b>                                   |
| A: <i>Here you are!</i>                         | <b>Hai, dōzo.</b>                                 |
| B: <i>Thank you very much.</i>                  | <b>Arigatō gozaimasu.</b>                         |
| A: <i>After you.</i>                            | <b>O-saki e dōzo.</b>                             |
| B: <i>Thank you.</i>                            | <b>Sumimasen.</b>                                 |
| A: <i>Come in!</i>                              | <b>O-hairi kudasai<sup>7</sup>.</b>               |
| B: <i>Thank you.</i>                            | <b>O-jama shimasu<sup>8</sup>.</b>                |
| A: <i>I'm off now.</i>                          | <b>Itte kimasu.</b>                               |
| B: <i>See you later.</i>                        | <b>Itte (i)rasshai<sup>9</sup>.</b>               |
| A: <i>I'm back.</i>                             | <b>Tadaima<sup>10</sup>.</b>                      |
| B: <i>Hello.</i>                                | <b>O-kaeri nasai.</b>                             |
| A: <i>Excuse me, is anyone there?</i>           | <b>Gomen kudasai<sup>11</sup>.</b>                |
| B: <i>Yes, just a minute, please.</i>           | <b>Hai, chotto matte kudasai.</b>                 |
| A: <i>Cheers!</i>                               | <b>Kanpai!</b>                                    |
| B: <i>Cheers!</i>                               | <b>Kanpai!</b>                                    |



## Chapter 2

### Notes:

- 1 **-san** may be added to family names to mean Mr, Mrs, Miss or Ms. It is also added, as here, to first names to show some respect. It is never used of oneself (see the first conversation). N.B. Often, as here, girls' names end in **-ko**.
- 2 Male and female teachers (of anything) and, for example, doctors will be addressed as **sensei**. **Sensei** is also attached to family names and sometimes first names (e.g. **Tanaka-sensei**; **Jon-sensei**) when addressing or referring to a teacher.
- 3 **-kun** is added to boys' first and family names by superiors as a sign of affection.
- 4 **Dōzo yoroshiku** is really untranslatable. It is a word used to request favourable consideration from another person (see Chapter 2, Conversations 2a and 2b).
- 5 This is a much more informal version of the previous greeting.
- 6 Alternatively, 'I haven't seen you for ages!'
- 7 **O-hairi kudasai** is used for 'come into a room or a Western style house'. 'Come into a Japanese house' is usually **O-agari kudasai**.
- 8 **O-jama shimasu** means literally 'I'm going to make a nuisance of myself'.
- 9 A family member (or guest) will say **Itte kimasu** either in the morning when he/she goes off to work or when he/she leaves the house to go shopping, etc. **Itte (i)rasshai** is the stock response of anyone left in the house.
- 10 **Tadaima** is what the same person will say upon returning from work or shopping, and **O-kaeri nasai** is the stock reply.
- 11 **Gomen kudasai** would, for example, be said by a customer on entering a shop when there appears to be no shop assistant.

### MAIN POINTS:

Statements – A is/isn't B; questions – is/isn't A, B?; answering questions; possession.

### CONVERSATIONS:

- (a) Introductions; (b) Are you American?
- (c) A business meeting.

## 1 Nouns

Japanese nouns do not have masculine, feminine or neuter forms, nor do they have singular or plural forms. Also, in Japanese there are no direct equivalents of *a*, *an*, *some* or *the*. So, 'a bullet train', 'the bullet train', 'bullet trains', 'some bullet trains' and 'the bullet trains' are all translated by **shinkansen**. The context in which this is placed – the rest of the sentence – will usually make clear if it is singular or plural.

## 2 'I, you, he, she,' etc.

These words (pronouns) are used in Japanese much less frequently than in English, since the context is relied upon to make clear who or what is being referred to. The most common pronouns are the following:

|             |                |
|-------------|----------------|
| I, me       | watashi        |
| you (sing.) | anata          |
| he, him     | kare           |
| she, her    | kanojo         |
| we, us      | watashi-tachi  |
| you (pl.)   | anata-tachi    |
| they        | ano hito-tachi |

The words 'this' and 'that' serve for 'it':

|   |      |
|---|------|
| this or it  | kore |
| that or it (near speaker and not far from hearer) | sore |
| that or it (near neither speaker nor hearer)      | are  |

Learn also the following words:

|  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| here (this place)                            | koko or kochira |
| there (near speaker and not far from hearer) | soko or sochira |
| there (near neither speaker nor hearer)      | asoko or achira |

### 3 The particle *wa*

The particle **wa** is a most important element of basic grammar. When placed after a word and said with rising intonation **A wa** means, in a very broad sense, 'What about A? (Where is A? Will A do? What happened to A? etc.)

Study the following:

|                              |                |
|------------------------------|----------------|
| What about me?               | Watashi wa?    |
| What about here?             | Koko wa?       |
| What about this?             | Kore wa?       |
| What about there?            | Asoko wa?      |
| What about the bullet train? | Shinkansen wa? |
| What about the beer?         | Biru wa?       |

The particle **wa**, whose literal meaning is 'as for', may also denote the subject and is needed to compose the basic sentence pattern 'A is B'.

### 4 Verbs (i)

'A is/is not B' is **A wa B desu/ja arimasen**; literally this translates as 'As for A, it is/is not B.' **De wa arimasen** (or, more colloquially, **ja arimasen**) is the negative of **desu**.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>That's the bullet train (J: As for that, it's the bullet train).</i> | <b>Are wa shinkansen desu.</b>                |
| <i>I'm not American (J: As for me ...).</i>                             | <b>Watashi wa Amerikajin ja arimasen.</b>     |
| <i>He's a businessman.</i>  | <b>Kare wa sarariman desu.</b>                |
| <i>They're not students.</i>  | <b>Ano hito-tachi wa gakusei ja arimasen.</b> |

When the context makes clear who or what the subject is, then it (and the following **wa**) are very often omitted:

She's Korean. **Kankokujin desu.**

Watch out for the many examples hereafter in which the subject is left unexpressed.

Note that main verbs come at the end of a sentence. They have no 1st, 2nd or 3rd person forms, and no singular or plural forms: '(I) am ...', '(You) are ...', '(He/she/it) is ...', '(We) are ...' and so on are translated by the one word **desu** (*be*).

### 5 Questions

Questions are formed by placing the question particle **ka** after the verb. 'Is A, B?' and 'Isn't A, B?' are **A wa B desu ka** and **A wa B ja arimasen ka**, respectively.

Is that the bullet train? (J: As for that, is it the ... ?)  
Isn't she Japanese?

Are wa shinkansen desu ka.  
Kanojo wa Nihonjin ja arimasen ka.

Note the effect of putting two questions together:

Is this Kobe or (is it) Osaka?

Koko wa Kōbe desu ka  
Ōsaka desu ka.

Is she Korean or (is she) Chinese?

Kanojo wa Kankokujin desu ka  
Chūgokujin desu ka.

## 6 Answering questions

'That's right', 'that's so', 'I agree' is *sō desu*; 'that's not so', 'that's wrong', 'I disagree' is *chigaimasu*:

A: Is she Korean?

Kanojo wa Kankokujin desu ka.

B: Yes, that's right.  
She's Korean.

Hai, sō desu. Kankokujin desu.

A: Is he Japanese?

Kare wa Nihonjin desu ka.

B: No, he's not. He's Chinese.

Īe, chigaimasu. Chūgokujin desu.

'I'm not sure' is *chotto wakarimasen*:

A: Is she Japanese or Chinese?

Kanojo wa Nihonjin desu ka  
Chūgokujin desu ka.

B: I'm not sure.

Chotto wakarimasen.

'Umm ...' is *sō desu ne*, or *etto*:

A: Is that the bullet train?

Are wa shinkansen desu ka.

B: Umm, I'm not sure.

Sō desu ne. Chotto wakarimasen.

Note the use of *sō desu ka* (lit. 'is that so?'):

A: She's a housewife.

Kanojo wa shufu desu.

B: Oh, is she?

A, sō desu ka.

A: He isn't a businessman.

Kare wa sararīman ja arimasen.

B: Oh, isn't he?

A, sō desu ka.

## Exercise 1

Put into Japanese:

- 1 I'm not a student. What about you?
- 2 'Is that the bullet train?' 'No, it's not.'
- 3 'Is she Japanese or Chinese?' 'Umm ...'
- 4 'This is my wife.' 'Pleased to meet you.'
- 5 'She's Korean.' 'Oh, is she?'

## 7 'You know', 'Isn't it?'

*Yo* after the main verb adds emphasis, often with the force of 'you know':

A: This isn't the Dai Ichi hotel, you know.

Koko wa Dai Ichi hoteru ja arimasen yo.

B: Oh, isn't it?

E, sō desu ka.

A: This is the Hilton.

Koko wa Hiruton desu yo.

B: Oh, is it?

A, sō desu ka.



Ne after the main verb is similar to the French 'n'est-ce pas?', so:

A: *That's the bullet train, isn't it?*      **Are wa shinkansen desu ne.**  
B: *That's right.*      **Sō desu yo.**  
A: *He isn't Japanese, is he?*      **Kare wa Nihonjin ja arimasen ne.**  
B: *No, he isn't.*      **Hai, sō desu yo\*.**

\* Be careful! The Japanese use 'Yes' (Hai) to mean 'What you say is correct'.

## 8 Possessives – the particle *no* (i)

**No** is a particle indicating possession in a very broad sense. **B no A** can mean, for example, 'B's A', 'A of B', 'A which is B', 'A who is B', 'A which is from B', 'A which is in B'. Study these examples:

*Tokyo is Japan's capital.*      **Tōkyō wa Nihon no shuto desu.**  
*This is a map of Tokyo, isn't it?*      **Kore wa Tōkyō no chizu desu ne.**  
*This is Chieko (who is) my wife.*      **Kanai no Chieko desu.**  
*What about the car (which is) over there?*      **Asoko no kuruma wa?**  
*This is Mr Tanaka (who is) from Mitsui.*      **Mitsui no Tanaka-san desu.**  
*What about the cost of living in Japan?*      **Nihon no bukka wa?**

'My', 'your', 'his', 'her', 'our' and 'their' are expressed by the relevant pronoun followed by **no**:

*It's my money.*      **(Sore wa) watashi no o-kane desu yo.**  
*That's his house, isn't it?*      **(Are wa) kare no ie desu ne.**

'Mine' or 'my one', 'yours' or 'your one', 'his' or 'his one', 'hers' or 'her one' and so forth are expressed by the pronoun plus **no** alone, as in:

*What about mine?*      **Watashi no wa?**  
*What about the one over there?*      **Asoko no wa?**  
*That isn't Mr Tanaka's, you know.*      **Are wa Tanaka-san no ja arimasen yo.**

**No** turns certain nouns, and some colours, into adjectives. For example:

|         |                      |
|---------|----------------------|
| real    | <b>hontō no</b>      |
| present | <b>ima no</b>        |
| brown   | <b>cha-iro no</b>    |
| yellow  | <b>ki-iro no</b>     |
| green   | <b>midori-iro no</b> |

*Is this real coffee?*      **Hontō no kōhī desu ka.**

*A: Is yours the brown bag?*      **Anata no wa cha-iro no kaban desu ka.**  
*B: Yes, my bag is brown.*      **Hai, watashi no kaban wa cha-iro desu\*.**

\* **No** is only used with these adjectives when they come before a noun.

### Exercise 2

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'That's real coffee, isn't it?' 'No, it's instant.'
- 2 'Is the yellow car yours?' 'No, it's not. My car is green.'
- 3 'What about some coffee?' 'Yes, please.'
- 4 That person over there isn't Japanese.
- 5 This isn't today's paper, you know.

## CONVERSATION 2A

### Introductions

*At the airport, Mr Brown (B) introduces to his wife Chieko (C) and his son David (D) his friend Professor Emura (E):*

- B:** Chieko, kochira<sup>1</sup> wa Tōkyō Daigaku no Emura-sensei desu. Emura-sensei, kanai no Chieko desu.  
**C:** Hajimemashite. Dōzo yoroshiku o-negai shimasu.  
**B:** Kanai wa Eigo no sensei desu.  
**E:** A, sō desu ka. Dōzo yoroshiku.  
**B:** Sensei, kore<sup>1</sup> wa musuko no Dēbiddo desu. Dēbiddo wa shōgakusei desu.  
**E:** A, sō desu ka. Hajimemashite.  
**D:** Hajimemashite.

## CONVERSATION 2B

### Are you American?

*A young Japanese businessman (A) starts a conversation with a foreign student (B):*

- A:** Sumimasen, Amerikajin desu ka<sup>2 3</sup>.  
**B:** Īe, chigaimasu. Igrisujin desu.  
**A:** A, sō desu ka. Gakusei desu ka.  
**B:** Hai, sō desu. Rondon daigaku no Nihon gakubu no gakusei desu.  
**A:** Naruhodo<sup>4</sup>. Watashi wa kaishain desu yo. Shitsurei desu ga<sup>5</sup>, o-namae<sup>6</sup> wa?  
**B:** Maiku desu.  
**A:** Ya, Maiku-san desu ka. Watashi wa Kunio desu. Satō Kunio<sup>7</sup>. Dōzo yoroshiku.  
**B:** Dōzo yoroshiku.

## CONVERSATION 2C

### A meeting

*Mr Brown (B) has arranged to meet a Mr Ikeda (I) from the Mitsui company in the lobby of the Dai Ichi hotel in Tokyo. He first inquires of a passer-by (P) if he's at the right hotel:*

- B:** Sumimasen. Koko wa Dai Ichi hoteru desu ka.  
**P:** Īe, chigaimasu yo. Dai Ichi wa asoko no hoteru desu yo.  
**B:** A, asoko desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu.  
**P:** Dō itashimashite.

*Mr Brown enters the lobby of the hotel:*

- I:** Shitsurei desu ga, ICI (ai-shi-ai) no Buraun-san de irasshaimasu<sup>8</sup> ka.  
**B:** Hai, sō desu.  
**I:** Hajimemashite. Mitsui no Ikeda to mōshimasu. Dōzo yoroshiku.  
**B:** Dōzo yoroshiku.  
**I:** Watashi no meishi desu.  
**B:** A, dōmo arigatō gozaimasu. Watashi no mo<sup>9</sup> dōzo.

## Notes:

1. **kochira wa, kore wa: kochira wa** is more respectful than **kore**, hence the former is used for Prof. Emura and the latter for members of Brown's family.
2. **Amerikajin desu ka:** the Japanese tend to avoid using the pronoun 'you' as much as possible. (The context makes clear who is being referred to here.)
3. **Amerikajin: -jin** placed after the name of a country gives a national of that country ... *America, Amerika; an American, Amerikajin. England, Igrisu; an English person, Igrisujin. Japan, Nihon; a Japanese, Nihonjin.*
4. **Naruhodo:** *I see.*
5. **shitsurei desu ga:** 'Excuse me for asking but ...'
6. **O-namae:** (lit. 'What about your name?'); the **o-** is honorific. **O-** may be attached to certain nouns out of respect for the listener. **O-** is also attached to certain nouns as a matter of course with no particular respect involved; e.g. **o-mizu** – *drinking water*; **o-tearai** – *the toilet*; **o-cha** – *(Japanese) tea*.
7. **Satō Kunio:** In Japan, family names come first and first names second.
8. **de irasshaimasu:** the 'honorific' equivalent of **desu**; it is never used of oneself, only of others to whom one wishes to show respect for whatever reason (e.g. strangers of similar or superior status; acquaintances of superior status).
9. **watashi no mo:** 'here's mine too'. Consider the following:

*He's a businessman too.*

**Kare mo sararīman desu.**

*Both he and she are students.*

**Kare mo kanojo mo gakusei desu.**

And in the negative:

*Neither he nor I are businessmen.*

**Kare mo watashi mo sararīman ja arimasen.**

In order to consider this and later chapters completed, you should now go over all the examples once again, covering up one side at a time, to ensure you can translate confidently into and from both languages.

## Chapter 3

### MAIN POINTS:

Questions – Who/where/what etc. is A?;  
locational expressions – A is in front of/behind etc. B;  
some particles – to, from, with, etc.

### CONVERSATIONS:

- (a) Asking for someone;
- (b) 'Where are we?'
- (c) A chance meeting.

## 9 'Who', 'where', 'what', 'when', etc.

Learn the following:

who?

**dare** (or **dochira-sama** in more polite speech)

where?

**doko** (or **dochira**)

what?

**nani** (but often **nan** before syllables of rows 6, 7 and 8 in the table on page 9)

which one (= of two)?

**dochira**

which one (= of three and more)?

**dore**

when?

**itsu**

what's ... like?

**dō**

how about?

**dō** (or **ikaga** in more polite speech)



'Who is A?' is **A wa dare desu ka** (literally: 'As for A, who is it?'). Study the following examples, noting those where the subject is not expressed:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| A: <i>Who is she? (J: as for her, who is she?)</i>   | <b>Kanojo wa dare desu ka.</b>             |
| B: <i>She's a singer.</i>                            | <b>Kashu desu.</b>                         |
| A: <i>Who are you?</i>                               | <b>Dochira-sama de irasshaimasu ka.</b>    |
| B: <i>I'm Tanaka from Mitsui.</i>                    | <b>Mitsui no Tanaka desu.</b>              |
| A: <i>Excuse me, where is the exit?</i>              | <b>Sumimasen, deguchi wa doko desu ka.</b> |
| B: <i>It's over there.</i>                           | <b>Asoko desu.</b>                         |
| A: <i>Where is the toilet?</i>                       | <b>O-tearai wa dochira desu ka.</b>        |
| B: <i>It's that way.</i>                             | <b>Achira desu.</b>                        |
| A: <i>What is that?</i>                              | <b>Sore wa nan desu ka.</b>                |
| B: <i>This is an alien registration card.</i>        | <b>Kore wa gaijin torōkushō desu.</b>      |
| A: <i>Which one (of the two) is his?</i>             | <b>Kare no wa dochira desu ka.</b>         |
| B: <i>His is that one over there.</i>                | <b>Kare no wa achira no desu yo.</b>       |
| A: <i>Which (of three or more) is yours, Yumiko?</i> | <b>Yumiko-san no wa dore desu ka.</b>      |
| B: <i>That one.</i>                                  | <b>Are desu.</b>                           |
| A: <i>When is the baseball match?</i>                | <b>Yakyū no shiai wa itsu desu ka.</b>     |
| B: <i>It's tomorrow.</i>                             | <b>Ashita desu.</b>                        |
| A: <i>What's today's weather like?</i>               | <b>Kyō no tenki wa dō desu ka.</b>         |
| B: <i>It's all right.</i>                            | <b>Māmā desu.</b>                          |
| A: <i>How about tomorrow?</i>                        | <b>Ashita wa dō desu ka.</b>               |
| B: <i>Tomorrow's no good.</i>                        | <b>Ashita wa dame desu.</b>                |
| A: <i>How about some tea?</i>                        | <b>O-cha wa ikaga desu ka.</b>             |
| B: <i>Yes, please.</i>                               | <b>O-negai shimasu.</b>                    |

## 10 Possessives – the particle *no* (ii)

**No** may be used with **dare**, **doko**, **nan** and **itsu**:

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| A: <i>Whose money is it?</i>                              | <b>Dare no o-kane desu ka.</b>  |
| B: <i>It's mine.</i>                                      | <b>Watashi no desu.</b>         |
| A: <i>Where's he from (J: a person of where)?</i>         | <b>Doko no hito desu ka.</b>    |
| B: <i>He's from America.</i>                              | <b>Amerika no hito desu.</b>    |
| A: <i>What's the book about (J: a book of what)?</i>      | <b>Nan no hon desu ka.</b>      |
| B: <i>It's about karate.</i>                              | <b>Karate no hon desu.</b>      |
| A: <i>Which newspaper is it (J: a newspaper of when)?</i> | <b>Itsu no shinbun desu ka.</b> |
| B: <i>It's today's.</i>                                   | <b>Kyō no desu.</b>             |

## 11 'This', 'that', 'which', etc.

The adjectives 'this', 'this sort of', 'what', 'what sort of' are:

|                                     |              |
|-------------------------------------|--------------|
| this                                | <b>kono</b>  |
| that (= near speaker and hearer)    | <b>sono</b>  |
| that (= not near speaker or hearer) | <b>ano</b>   |
| which, what                         | <b>dono</b>  |
| this sort of                        | <b>konna</b> |
| that sort of                        | <b>sonna</b> |
| that sort of                        | <b>anna</b>  |
| which/what sort of                  | <b>donna</b> |

Consider the examples below:

|  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| A: <i>That car is a Toyota.</i>                  | <b>Ano kuruma wa Toyota desu yo.</b> |
| B: <i>Which car do you mean? (lit. 'is it?')</i> | <b>Dono kuruma desu ka.</b>          |
| A: <i>That brown car.</i>                        | <b>Ano chairo no kuruma desu.</b>    |
| B: <i>Oh is it?</i>                              | <b>A, sō desu ka.</b>                |
| A: <i>What sort of person is he?</i>             | <b>Donna hito desu ka.</b>           |
| B: <i>He's an ordinary person.</i>               | <b>Futsū no hito desu yo.</b>        |

## 12 'In front of', 'behind', etc.

Note the following locational words:

|                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| front (= in front of)   | <b>mae</b>     |
| before (= this side of) | <b>temae</b>   |
| back (= behind)         | <b>ushiro</b>  |
| inside                  | <b>naka</b>    |
| outside                 | <b>soto</b>    |
| top (= on top of)       | <b>ue</b>      |
| bottom (= under)        | <b>shita</b>   |
| near                    | <b>chikaku</b> |
| beside                  | <b>tonari</b>  |
| beyond                  | <b>mukō</b>    |
| opposite                | <b>mukai</b>   |

The particle **no** is used to join these words to others.  
Note the word order:

|  |                        |
|--|------------------------|
| <i>in front of the coffee shop</i>       | <b>kissaten no mae</b> |
| <i>behind the door</i>                   | <b>doa no ushiro</b>   |
| <i>this side of the department store</i> | <b>depāto no temae</b> |
| <i>beyond the police office</i>          | <b>kōban no mukō</b>   |
| <i>beside the station</i>                | <b>eki no tonari</b>   |
| <i>under the chair</i>                   | <b>isu no shita</b>    |
| <i>on (top of) the table</i>             | <b>tēburu no ue</b>    |

Consider the 'expanded' examples below:

|  |                               |
|--|-------------------------------|
| <i>the coffee shop in front of the station</i> | <b>eki no mae no kissaten</b> |
| <i>the person behind the door</i>              | <b>doa no ushiro no hito</b>  |

Locational words may fit into the basic **A wa B desu** (de wa arimasen) structure:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>The coffee shop is (J: as for the coffee shop, it is) in front of the station.</i> | <b>Kissaten wa eki no mae desu.</b>     |
| <i>The police office is beside the bar.</i>   | <b>Kōban wa sunakku no tonari desu.</b> |

Locational words followed by **no** act as adjectives:

|                            |                        |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>the person in front</i> | <b>mae no hito</b>     |
| <i>the back door</i>       | <b>ushiro no doa</b>   |
| <i>the top drawer</i>      | <b>ue no hikidashi</b> |
| <i>the shop opposite</i>   | <b>mukai no o-mise</b> |

### Exercise 3

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Who is the man over there?' '(Do you mean) the man in front of the window?'
- 2 Is this paper today's or yesterday's?
- 3 'Excuse me, but where is the toilet?' 'It's over there.'
- 4 'What's that?' 'That's my ticket, you know.'
- 5 'What's the sashimi like?' 'It's all right.'

## 13 Verbs: plain and polite

All verbs have a plain form (the form found in a dictionary) and also a polite form. In every case except one the latter ends in **masu**, and is usually called the **masu** form. In the vocabularies, verbs are given in both forms: e.g. **suru/shimasu** ('do'). The difference is one of politeness alone. **Shimasu** is more polite than the plain **suru**. Consequently, the **masu** form is taught throughout most of this book, and you are advised to stick to the **masu** form yourself.

The one verb which has no **masu** form is **desu** ('be'). **Desu**, however, corresponds in politeness to a **masu** form. **Da** is its plain form.

## 14 'Be' – Arularimasu, irulimasu

**Aru/arimasu** and **iru/imasu** mean 'be' (not in the sense of 'A equals B', for which **da/desu** is used). These verbs mean 'be (in a place)', '(there) is/are', 'exist'. For inanimate subjects, **aru/arimasu** is used, and for animate subjects **iru/imasu** is generally used.

The negative of **masu** is **masen**. Consider carefully the following:

|  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| A: Is there (have you got) any coffee? | <b>Kōhī wa arimasu ka.</b>      |
| B: Yes there is (I have).              | <b>Hai, arimasu yo.</b>         |
| A: Haven't you got the passports?      | <b>Pasupōto wa arimasen ka.</b> |
| B: (No) I haven't.                     | <b>Arimasen.</b>                |
| A: Yumiko isn't here.                  | <b>Yumiko wa imasen yo.</b>     |
| B: Isn't she?                          | <b>Sō desu ka.</b>              |

The future is also translated by the plain **masu** form:

|                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A: Will you be in tomorrow, Kunio? | <b>Kunio-san, ashita imasu ka.</b> |
| B: No, I shan't.                   | <b>Imasen yo.</b>                  |

## 15 'Be' – Irassharu/irasshaimasu, oru/orimasu

Two other verbs for 'be (in a place)' are needed:

- (a) **Irassharu/irasshaimasu** is an 'honorific' verb, one used to exalt the position of its subject. It is never used of oneself, nor when referring to members of one's family or intimates. It would be used, for example, to address someone of superior status, or someone of similar status to whom, for whatever reason, one wished to show respect. It may also be used when referring to someone of superior status or someone of similar status to whom one wished to show respect.
- (b) **Oru/orimasu** is a humble verb, used to lower the status of the speaker, his family and those associated with him out of deference for others.

Study carefully the examples below, taking particular note that (i) Mr Murata is visiting Mr Habu (who works for a travel agent) and (ii) Professor Tanaka is a colleague of Professor Inoue:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Mr Murata: Is Mr Habu in?              | <b>Habu-san wa irasshaimasu ka.</b>      |
| Habu's colleague: Yes, he is.          | <b>Hai, orimasu.</b>                     |
| Student: Is Professor Tanaka in?       | <b>Tanaka-sensei wa irasshaimasu ka.</b> |
| Professor Inoue: He's not in now.      | <b>Ima imasen.</b>                       |
| Student: Tanaka-sensei! Are you there? | <b>Tanaka-sensei! Irasshaimasu ka.</b>   |
| Professor Tanaka: Yes, I'm here.       | <b>Hai, orimasu yo.</b>                  |



If two students are talking together, then they are unlikely to use 'honorifics' when referring to the Professor, and may well use the plain *iru*:

Student: *Is Prof Tanaka in?* **Tanaka-sensei iru?**

Student: *Yes, he's in.* **Iru yo.**

N.B. There is a good deal of flexibility in these honorific forms. They are by no means used consistently, and the forms given above are intended as a guide only.

## 16 'In', 'of', 'to': the particle *ni*

Location is commonly expressed by the particle *ni* ('in') plus **aru/arimasu, iru/imasu** (or one of its other forms):

A: *Where (J: in where) is the professor?*

**Sensei wa dochira ni irasshaimasu ka.**

B: *He's in his room.*

**Heya ni irasshaimasu yo.**

A: *Where's the dictionary?*

**Jisho wa doko ni arimasu ka.**

B: *Isn't it on the table?*

**Tēburu no ue ni arimasen ka.**

'To' and 'towards' (always expressed in Japanese) are also translated by *ni*, or by *e*:

A: *Where (J: to where) are you going?*

**Doko ni (e) ikimasu ka.**

B: *I'm going to the shops.*

**O-mise ni (e) ikimasu.**

A: *Are you going home?*

**Uchi ni (e) kaerimasu ka.**

B: *No, I'm going to a friend's place.*

**Īe, tomodachi no tokoro ni (e) ikimasu.**

## 17 'From' and some other particles

Note that word order is fairly free in Japanese. As a rule the item followed by *wa* comes first.

'From' is *kara*. It can be used of place or time:

*I'll walk from the station.*

**Eki kara arukimasu.**

*The holidays start from today.*

**Yasumi wa kyō kara hajimarimasu.**

In 'from A to (until) B' the 'to' or 'until' is made:

*I walk from the station to the office.*

**Eki kara kaisha made arukimasu.**

*She'll be at home from morning until evening.*

**Kanojo wa asa kara ban made uchi ni imasu.**

'In' or 'at', in the sense of 'performing an action in/at (a place)' is *de* (*ni* only being used for 'static' verbs such as 'be', 'stand', 'sit', 'live'):

A: *Where will you wait?*

**Doko de machimasu ka.**

B: *I'll wait in front of the exit.*

**Deguchi no mae de machimasu.**

'On, by (a train)', 'with (chopsticks)', 'in (English)' are also translated by *de*:

*I go by bus to work.*

**Basu de kaisha e ikimasu.**

*I'll eat with chopsticks too.*

**Watashi mo hashi de tabemasu yo.**

*I'll speak in English.*

**Eigo de hanashimasu.**

All particles, such as *kara*, *made*, *de* and *ni*, can be followed by *wa* or *mo*. With *wa*, a contrast is often implied, as in:

*In Tokyo there aren't any (but, e.g., there are in Kyoto)*

**Tōkyō ni wa arimasen.**

*I won't go by bus (but, e.g., by bike)*

**Basu de wa ikimasen.**

Followed by **mo**, the meaning may be '... both ... and ...', or in the negative '... neither ... nor ...':

*Guests are coming from both  
Korea and Hong Kong.*

**O-kyaku-san wa Kankoku  
kara mo Honkon kara mo  
kimasu.**

*He won't tell either me or you,  
will he?*

**Watashi ni mo anata ni mo  
iimasen ne.**

## Exercise 4

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 Have you got any coffee?
- 2 Will you go by bus to the airport?
- 3 The passports are over there.
- 4 I'm going to speak in Japanese.
- 5 Mr Ikeda will not be in tomorrow.

## CONVERSATION 3A

### Asking for someone

*Mr Brown (B) goes to the travel agent's and speaks to a  
colleague (C) of Tanaka's:*

**B: Sumimasen. Buraun to mōshimasu ga<sup>1</sup>, Tanaka-san  
wa irasshaimasu ka.**

**C: Tanaka wa ima orimasen<sup>2</sup> ga ...**

**B: So desu ka. Sore de wa, nochi hodo ukagaimasu<sup>3</sup>.**

## CONVERSATION 3B

### 'Where are we?'

*Mr Brown (B) is on a subway train stopped at a station; he  
talks to another passenger (X):*

**B: Sumimasen. Koko wa doko desu ka. Shinjuku  
desu ka.**

**X: Īe, Shinjuku ja arimasen yo. Etto, Shibuya desu.**

**B: Sō desu ka. Shinjuku made ikimasu ka.**

**X: Etto, chotto matte kudasai. Hai, Shinjuku ni  
ikimasu yo.**

**B: Kono tsugi<sup>4</sup> desu ka.**

**X: Chigaimasu. Tsugi no tsugi desu.**

**B: Dōmo arigatō.**

## CONVERSATION 3C

### A chance meeting

*Mr Brown (B) bumps into Mr Katayama (K), whom he hasn't  
seen for a while:*

**B: Katayama-san, konnichi wa!**

**K: Buraun-san desu ka. O-hisashiburi desu ne.  
O-genki desu ka.**

**B: O-kage-sama de genki desu. Katayama-san wa?**

**K: Genki desu.**

**B: Dō desu ka<sup>5</sup>, Katayama-san. O-cha demo<sup>6</sup>  
nomimasen ka<sup>7</sup>.**

**K: Sō desu ne<sup>8</sup>. Nomi ni<sup>9</sup> ikimashō<sup>10</sup>. Etto, eki no tonari  
no kissaten wa dō desu ka.**

**B: Kadota desu ne. Asoko ni shimashō<sup>11</sup>.**

**K: Kuruma<sup>12</sup> de ikimasu ka soretomo<sup>13</sup> arukimasu ka.**

**B: Arukimashō.**



## Chapter 4

### Notes:

- ga**: a conjunction meaning 'but', but often (as here) it has no adversative force at all. See Chapter 4.
- orimasu**: the humble verb is used by the speaker, who is humbling himself and Tanaka out of respect for the customer, Mr Brown.
- ukagaimasu**: **ukagau/ukagaimasu** is a humble verb meaning here 'visit'.
- kono tsugi**: 'the one after this'.
- dō desu ka**: 'how about it?'
- o-cha demo**: 'tea or something similar'.
- nomimasen ka**: 'would(n't) you like to drink?'
- sō desu ne**: depending on the intonation **sō desu ne** can be either a positive-sounding 'umm' as here, or a negative-sounding one.
- nomi ni**: remove **masu** from any verb, add **ni** and the verb **iku/ikimasu** (go) or **kuru/kimasu** (come) to make 'go/come and do'.
- ikimashō**: change **masu** to **mashō** to make 'Let's ...', add **ka** to make 'Shall I/we ...'. Consider the following:  

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| A: <i>Let's go to a pub.</i>                | <b>Pabu ni ikimashō.</b>             |
| B: <i>Yes, let's.</i>                       | <b>Ikimashō.</b>                     |
| A: <i>Shall we eat in that coffee shop?</i> | <b>Ano kissaten de tabemashō ka.</b> |
| B: <i>Yes, let's (J: Let's do so).</i>      | <b>Sō shimashō.</b>                  |
- ni shimashō**: 'Let's decide/settle on ...', 'let's make it ...'
- kuruma**: here, the word for 'car' is used to mean 'taxi'.
- soretomo**: 'or'.

### MAIN POINTS:

Verbs and their subjects (**wa** and **ga**);  
 verbs and their objects (**wa**, **o** and **ni**); the past tense.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) In a coffee shop; (b) In a taxi.

## 18 Verbs and their subjects ... The differences between *wa* and *ga*

The subject of a verb is followed by the particle **ga**:

*A book is (there is a book) on the table.*

**Tēburu no ue ni hon ga arimasu.**

*Mr Brown uses chopsticks.*

**Buraun-san ga hashi o tsukaimasu.**

As you know, **wa** can also follow a word which is the subject of the sentence, so something must be said on the difference between the two particles.

**Ga** often implies that the word it follows is new to the conversation, so it often corresponds to the English 'a (book)', 'some (books)' as opposed to 'the (book which you're reading)'; **ga** emphasizes the word it follows, rather than the rest of the sentence; **ga** and only **ga** is used after question words (e.g. **dare ga ...**; **doko ga ...**); in reply to such sentences, **ga** and only **ga** is used (e.g. **watashi ga ...**; **asoko ga ...**).



**Wa** follows what is the general topic of the sentence ('the topic' may in fact be the object or some other part of speech, and not exclusively the subject), and **A wa** has the meaning of 'as for A, the following is important', or 'we're discussing A, this is what I want to say about it/him etc.>'; **wa** is also used to provide a contrast, so **A wa** can mean 'A (in contrast to others), ...'; **wa** is generally used more in negative sentences.

Study the following and then refer back to the explanation:

- A: *There is a passport on the table.*      **Tēburu no ue ni pasupōto ga arimasu.**  
 B: *The passport is on the table.*      **Pasupōto wa\* tēburu no ue ni arimasu.**
- A: *There's a coffee shop over there.*      **Asoko ni kissaten ga arimasu.**  
 B: *The coffee shop is over there.*      **Kissaten wa\* asoko ni arimasu.**

(\* Note again that the item followed by **wa** generally comes first in the sentence.)

- A: *I'm going.*      **Watashi ga ikimasu.**  
 (in answer to 'Who's going?')
- B: *I'm going.*      **Watashi wa ikimasu.**  
 (in answer to 'What about you?')
- A: *He's coming.*      **Kare ga kimasu.**  
 (in answer to 'Who's coming?')
- B: *He's coming.*      **Kare wa kimasu.**  
 (in answer to 'What about him?')
- A: *I'm going but my wife isn't.*      **Watashi wa ikimasu ga kanai wa ikimasen.**  
 B: *He's a teacher, but she isn't.*      **Kare wa sensei desu ga kanojo wa chigaimasu.**

## 19 Verbs and their objects (i)

Direct objects of verbs are followed by the particle **o**:

*I'm going to watch the television.*      **Terebi o mimasu.**  
*Let's have a(n alcoholic) drink.*      **O-sake o nomimashō.**

Where the object is a question word such as **nani** or **dare**, it too will be followed by **o** (NEVER by **wa**):

- A: *What do the Japanese eat for breakfast?*      **Nihonjin wa asa-gohan ni nani o tabemasu ka.**  
 B: *They eat toast.*      **Tōsuto o tabemasu.**
- A: *Who(m) are you going to invite?*      **Dare o yobimasu ka.**  
 B: *Let's invite Professor Tanaka.*      **Tanaka-sensei o yobimashō.**

The emphasis here is on the word followed by **o**.

Sometimes **mo** and **wa** are more appropriate for the direct object. **Mo** ('also', 'both ... and ...' or 'even') will replace **o** in sentences such as the following:

- Today I'm going to eat both sashimi and natto.*      **Kyō wa sashimi mo natto mo tabemasu.**  
*He doesn't even eat rice.*      **Kare wa gohan mo tabemasen.**

**Wa** will often replace **o** in negative sentences:

- I shan't buy the Mainichi (newspaper).*      **Mainichi wa kaimasen.**  
*Aren't you going to watch the news?*      **Nyūsu wa mimasen ka.**

when making a contrast:

- I'll buy the paper, but I won't get the bread.*      **Shinbun wa kaimasu ga pan wa kaimasen.**

in answer to a question containing **wa**:

A: *What about the Ryoanji temple?* **Ryōanji wa mimasu ka.**

*Are you going to see that?*

B: *Yes, I'm going to see the Ryoanji.*

**Hai, Ryōanji wa mimasu.**

Finally, note that in less formal conversation **wa**, **ga** and **o** are all very frequently dropped!

## 20 Verbs and their objects (ii)

Some verbs take the object particle **o**, where English may require 'over', 'along', 'around' or 'at' or nothing at all. Consider:

*Let's cross (over) the road at the traffic lights.*

**Shingō de michi o watarimashō.**

*We'll go straight along this road.*

**Kono michi o massugu ikimasu yo.**

*Let's turn (to the) left at (round) this corner.*

**Kono kado o hidari e magari mashō.**

'... please', ... **kudasai** or, more politely, **o-negai shimasu**, 'Here you are, here's ...', **dōzo**, and 'Thank you for ...', **arigatō gozaimasu**, require **o**:

*(May I have) the Mainichi, please.*

**Mainichi o kudasai.**

*A coffee, please.*

**Kōhī o o-negai shimasu.**

*Here's your coffee.*

**Kōhī o dōzo.**

*Thank you for the flowers.*

**Hana o arigatō gozaimasu.**

## 21 Verbs and their objects (iii)

The indirect objects of verbs must be followed by **ni**:

*I'll phone him (J: to him).*

**Kare ni denwa o kakemasu.**

*Are you going to write a letter to your teacher?*

**Sensei ni tegami o kakimasu ka.**

## Exercise 5

Put into Japanese:

- 1 There is some money in my purse.
- 2 'The money is not in the drawer.' 'Where is it?'
- 3 'He speaks both Japanese and Chinese.' 'Does he?'
- 4 'Who's going to post the letter?' 'I'll post it.'
- 5 I shan't go today. I'll go tomorrow.

## 22 'And', 'or', 'with'

When 'and' joins nouns, **to** may be used:

*My wife and I are having a party.*

**Watashi to kanai (to) ga pātei\* o hirakimasu.**

*A hamburger and chips please.*

**Hanbāgā to furaido poteto o o-negai shimasu.**

\*Pronounce as in English 'party'.

**Ya** conveys the idea of 'A and B amongst other things':

*We bought wine and beer and cola (amongst other things).*

**Wain ya bīru ya kōra o kaimashita.**

Equally common is ... **toka ... toka ... nado**. The **nado** may correspond to 'etcetera', 'and all sorts of things':

*There are books and newspapers and letters and all sorts of things on the floor.*

**Yuka no ue ni hon toka shinbun toka tegami nado ga arimasu.**

With just one item either **toka** or **nado** may be used:

*There were magazines (and things).* Zasshi toka arimashita.  
or Zasshi nado arimashita.

'Or' is **ka** or **mata wa**:

*The Japanese eat (either) rice or toast for breakfast.* Nihonjin wa gohan mata wa tōsuto o chōshoku ni tabemasu.

'With' is **to**, and sometimes **to issho ni**:

*I'll go with him.* Kare to ikimasu.  
*Who are you going with?* Dare to (issho ni) ikimasu ka.

Note how you say the following:

*Let's do it together.* Issho ni shimashō.  
*Are you coming (with us)?* Issho ni kimasu ka.

## 23 'But', 'and'

'But' may be **ga** or **keredomo**:

*Excuse me, but where is the toilet?* Sumimasen ga o-tearai wa dochira desu ka.  
*I'm not going tomorrow but what about you (are you* Watashi wa ashita ikimasen ga anata wa?

*The passport is mine but the wallet isn't.* Pasupōto wa watashi no desu ga saifu wa watashi no ja arimasen.

**Ga** often ends a sentence, indicating hesitation:

*A: Have you got any tea?* O-cha wa arimasu ka.  
*B: We have (why, would you like some? etc.).* Arimasu ga ...  
*A: Are you Mr Tanaka?* Tanaka-san de irasshaimasu ka.  
*B: Yes, I'm Tanaka (why do you ask?; what do you want? etc.).* Hai, Tanaka desu ga ...

'And (then)' can be expressed by **sore kara** (or **soshite**):

*Let's go and see a film and then have a meal.* Eiga o mi ni ikimashō. Sore kara gohan o tabe ni ikimashō.

## 24 The past tense (i)

The past tense of **desu** is **deshita**:

*A: Who was it?* Dare deshita ka.  
*B: It was Mr Ikeda.* Ikeda-san deshita yo.  
*A: What was the film like?* Eiga wa dō deshita ka.  
*B: It was all right.* Māmā deshita.

The past tense of verbs ending in **masu** is **mashita**:

*A: Who came last night?* Yūbe dare ga kimashita ka.  
*B: I did.* Watashi desu.

The past negative of **desu** is formed by adding **deshita** to **de wa (ja) arimasen**:

*It wasn't me.* Watashi ja arimasen deshita.  
*Wasn't it her?* Kanojo ja arimasen deshita ka.

The past negative of other verbs is made by adding **deshita** to **masen**:

*I didn't read yesterday's paper.* Kinō no shinbun wa yomimasen deshita.  
*Didn't you eat the sushi?* Sushi wa tabemasen deshita ka.

N.B. The perfect tense, e.g. 'Have you (finished)?', 'I've (eaten)', etc., may also be expressed by the **mashita** form:

*A: Have you finished?* Owarimashita ka.  
*B: Yes, I have.* Hai, owarimashita.  
*A: I've eaten.* Tabemashita.  
*B: Have you?* Sō desu ka.



The negative past (**masen deshita**), however, is not used for the negative perfect (i.e. 'have not done', etc.). The entirely different construction required for this will be introduced in Chapter 8.

## 25 'Now', 'already', 'not yet' – *Ima, mō, mada*

**Ima, mō** and **mada** are three adverbs easily confused. **Ima** is used for 'now' with a verb in the **masu** or **mashō** form, and 'just now' with a verb in the past tense:

*I'm going out now.*                    **Ima dekakemasu yo.**  
*Let's eat now.*                        **Ima tabemashō.**  
*There was a phone call just now.* **Ima denwa ga arimashita.**

**Mō** means both 'already' and 'now':

*Are you going to bed already*        **Mō nemasu ka.**  
*(now)?*  
*Have you finished already (now)?* **Mō owarimashita ka.**

**Mada** with a negative means 'not yet':

*It won't be finished yet.*            **Mada owarimasen.**  
*We're not going out yet.*          **Mada dekakemasen yo.**

**Mada desu** alone is very commonly used to mean 'not yet':

*A: Have you read it yet?*            **Mō yomimashita ka.**  
*B: Not yet.*                            **Mada desu.**

**Sugu (ni)**, 'immediately', 'straight away', combines with **ima** to give 'at this very moment'; and with **mō** to give 'soon', 'in a minute':

*I can't do it at this very moment.* **Ima sugu dekimasen.**  
*We'll be having dinner in a*        **Mō sugu gohan o tabemasu**  
*minute.*                                **yo.**

## Exercise 6

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 We didn't go out for a drink last night.
- 2 She went straight home.
- 3 I didn't eat the sashimi.
- 4 The soya sauce and the sashimi are over there.
- 5 I'll finish in a minute.
- 6 A hamburger and a coffee, please.
- 7 Didn't you speak to her in Japanese?

## CONVERSATION 4A

### In a coffee shop

*Mr Brown (B) orders breakfast from the waitress (W):*

**W:** Irasshaimase<sup>1</sup>.

*(She brings water and a hot towel to Mr Brown, who takes a seat)*

**W:** Nani ni itashimashō<sup>2</sup> ka.

**B:** Sō desu ne. Kyō no mōningu<sup>3</sup> wa nan desu ka.

**W:** Tamago to tōsuto de gozaimasu<sup>4</sup> ga.

**B:** Sore ja<sup>5</sup>, mōningu (o)<sup>6</sup> o-negai shimasu.

**W:** Kōhī no mōningu de gozaimasu ka. Kōcha no mōningu de gozaimasu ka.

**B:** Kōhī (o) o-negai shimasu. A, yappari kōcha ni shimasu yo.

**W:** Miruku-tei\* ga yoroshii desu ka<sup>7</sup>.

**B:** Hai.

**W:** Sore de wa miruku-tei no mōningu de gozaimasu ne. Kashikomarimashita<sup>8</sup>. Shōshō o-machi-kudasai<sup>9</sup>.

**B:** Sumimasen. Kyō no shinbun (wa) arimasu ka.

**W:** Hai, sochira ni gozaimasu<sup>10</sup>. Asahi to Mainichi wa gozaimasu ga Eiji-shinbun wa gozaimasen.

**W:** Miruku-tei no mōningu, o-matase shimashita<sup>11</sup>.

**B:** Dōmo.

*(Some time later)*

**B:** O-kanjō (o) o-negai shimasu.

**W:** Hai, kashikomarimashita.

\* Pronounce as in English 'tea'.

## CONVERSATION 4B

### In a taxi

*Mr Brown (B) asks a passer-by (P) if there's a taxi rank:*

**B:** Sumimasen. Chikaku ni takushī noriba wa arimasen ka.

**P:** Takushī noriba desu ka. Etto, chotto matte kudasai. Asoko no depāto no mae no basu tei no chikaku ni arimashita yo.

**B:** Arigatō.

*He finds a taxi and speaks to the driver (D):*

**B:** Tarumi eki made o-negai shimasu.

**D:** Eki no dono hen desu ka.

**B:** Eki-mae o-negai shimasu.

**D:** Hai, wakarimashita.

*(Ten minutes later)*

**B:** Untenshu-san, mō sugu tsukimasu ka.

**D:** Hai, mō sugu desu yo ... Hai, eki-mae desu.

**B:** Kono hen de oroshite kudasai<sup>12</sup>.

*The passenger pays:*

**B:** O-tsuri wa kekkō desu<sup>13</sup>.

**D:** Āa, dōmo.



## Notes:

1. **Irasshaimase:** a stock greeting made by shop assistants, waiters, etc., when one enters shops, cafés, restaurants. No reply is necessary.
2. **itashimashō: itasu/itashimasu** is a humble form of **suru/shimasu**.
3. **mōningu:** an abbreviation of **mōningu sābisu**, which is a cheap and light breakfast available at most Japanese coffee shops.
4. **de gozaimasu: de gozaru/de gozaimasu** is a politer, humbler form of **da/desu**.
5. **sore ja:** an abbreviation of **sore de wa**, 'well, then'.
6. **(o) o-negai shimasu:** as mentioned in section 19, the object particle **o** and other particles are frequently omitted in conversation.
7. **... ga yoroshii desu ka:** a polite form of **... ga ii desu ka**, literally 'is it good?' (for adjectives ending in **i**, see Chapter 6).
8. **kashikomarimashita:** a polite word meaning 'I have understood'.
9. **shōshō o-machi kudasai:** a politer form of **chotto matte kudasai**.
10. **gozaimasu: gozaru/gozaimasu** is a politer, humbler form of **aru/arimasu**.
11. **... o-matase shimashita:** 'I'm sorry to have kept you waiting for ...'. A polite expression.
12. **oroshite kudasai:** '(Please) let me off here'.
13. **kekko desu:** here '... is unnecessary'. Tipping is not commonplace in Japan, except in the form of a few coins to a taxi driver.

## Chapter 5

### MAIN POINTS:

Numbers; time; dates; only; miscellaneous numeral expressions.

### CONVERSATIONS:

- (a) Birthdays; (b) At the post office;  
 (c) At the station ticket office.

## 26 Numbers (Chinese)

There are two counting systems, both in daily use. One is of Chinese origin, the other Japanese. Chinese numbers can be used alone or in combination with various 'counters'.

Alone, the Chinese numbers will be used for: counting from 1 onwards, without reference to specific concrete objects; in mathematics; and for saying telephone numbers.

Learn the numbers from 0–10, and then from 11–20, noticing how the latter are formed logically, by saying 'ten-one', 'ten-two' and so on up to 'two-ten':

|    |               |    |                   |
|----|---------------|----|-------------------|
| 0  | rei (zero)    | 11 | jūichi            |
| 1  | ichi          | 12 | jūni              |
| 2  | ni            | 13 | jūsan             |
| 3  | san           | 14 | jūshi (jūyon)     |
| 4  | shi (yon)     | 15 | jūgo              |
| 5  | go            | 16 | jūroku            |
| 6  | roku          | 17 | jūshichi (jūnana) |
| 7  | shichi (nana) | 18 | jūhachi           |
| 8  | hachi         | 19 | jūkyū (jūku)      |
| 9  | kyū (ku)      | 20 | nijū              |
| 10 | jū            |    |                   |



From 20 to 100 there are some irregularities: 40 is **yonjū** (not shijū); 70 is **nanajū** (not shichijū); 90 is **kyūjū** (not kujū).

In the Chinese system, then, there are variants for certain numbers: 4 is either **shi** or **yon** (the latter being, in practice, so much more common that you may use it unless otherwise advised), 7 is **shichi** or **nana**, 9 is **ku** or **kyū**.

100 is **hyaku**, 1,000 is **sen**. Learn the following, and note the phonetic changes in those with an asterisk\*:

|     |                  |       |                |
|-----|------------------|-------|----------------|
| 100 | <b>hyaku</b>     | 1,000 | <b>sen</b>     |
| 200 | <b>nihyaku</b>   | 2,000 | <b>nisen</b>   |
| 300 | <b>sanbyaku*</b> | 3,000 | <b>sansen</b>  |
| 400 | <b>yonhyaku</b>  | 4,000 | <b>yonsen</b>  |
| 500 | <b>gohyaku</b>   | 5,000 | <b>gosen</b>   |
| 600 | <b>roppyaku*</b> | 6,000 | <b>rokusen</b> |
| 700 | <b>nanahyaku</b> | 7,000 | <b>nanasen</b> |
| 800 | <b>happyaku*</b> | 8,000 | <b>hassen*</b> |
| 900 | <b>kyūhyaku</b>  | 9,000 | <b>kyūsen</b>  |

10,000 is **ichiman**; 100,000 is **jūman** and 1,000,000 is **hyakuman**.

You can now form any number:

|         |                                    |
|---------|------------------------------------|
| 28      | <b>nijū hachi</b>                  |
| 376     | <b>sanbyaku nanajū roku</b>        |
| 5,211   | <b>gosen nihyaku jūichi</b>        |
| 199,805 | <b>jūkyūman kyūsen happyaku go</b> |

## 27 Telling the time

'O'clock' requires the time counter **ji**. Learn the following:

|           |                         |            |                 |
|-----------|-------------------------|------------|-----------------|
| 1 o'clock | <b>ichiji</b>           | 7 o'clock  | <b>shichiji</b> |
| 2 o'clock | <b>niji</b>             | 8 o'clock  | <b>hachiji</b>  |
| 3 o'clock | <b>sanji</b>            | 9 o'clock  | <b>kuji</b>     |
| 4 o'clock | <b>yoji</b> (not yonji) | 10 o'clock | <b>jūji</b>     |
| 5 o'clock | <b>goji</b>             | 11 o'clock | <b>jūichiji</b> |
| 6 o'clock | <b>rokuji</b>           | 12 o'clock | <b>jūniji</b>   |

'Half past' is expressed by **han** placed after the hour, so that 'half past one' becomes 'one o'clock, half': **ichiji han**. Similarly, 'half past twelve' is **jūniji han**, and so on.

'Minute' is **fun**, but again there are some phonetic changes evident from the spelling below:

|            |                                     |
|------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 minute   | <b>ippun</b>                        |
| 2 minutes  | <b>nifun</b>                        |
| 3 minutes  | <b>sanpun</b>                       |
| 4 minutes  | <b>yonpun</b>                       |
| 5 minutes  | <b>gofun</b>                        |
| 6 minutes  | <b>roppun</b>                       |
| 7 minutes  | <b>nanafun</b>                      |
| 8 minutes  | <b>hachifun</b> (or <b>happun</b> ) |
| 9 minutes  | <b>kyūfun</b>                       |
| 10 minutes | <b>juppun</b>                       |
| 20 minutes | <b>nijuppun</b>                     |
| etc.       |                                     |

To express minutes past the hour, you must again change the conventional English order:

|   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| <i>Three minutes past one</i>             | <b>Ichiji sanpun.</b>  |
| <i>(J: one o'clock, three minutes).</i>   |                        |
| <i>A quarter past six</i>                 | <b>Rokuji jūgofun.</b> |
| <i>(J: six o'clock, fifteen minutes).</i> |                        |
| <i>Nine minutes past nine.</i>            | <b>Kuji kyūfun.</b>    |

Minutes before the hour maintain this same order, with the addition of **mae** ('before'):

|  |                              |
|--|------------------------------|
| <i>Five minutes to four</i>                    | <b>Yoji gofun mae.</b>       |
| <i>(J: four o'clock, five minutes before).</i> |                              |
| <i>A quarter to eleven.</i>                    | <b>Jūichiji jūgofun mae.</b> |
| <i>Four minutes to four.</i>                   | <b>Yoji yonpun mae.</b>      |

**Ni** expresses 'at':

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>She came at a quarter past three.</i>       | <b>Sanji jūgofun ni kimashita.</b>        |
| <i>We boarded the plane at half past four.</i> | <b>Yoji han ni hikōki ni norimashita.</b> |

'What time ...' is **nanji**:

A: *What time is it?*

**Nanji desu ka.**

B: *It's 9.45 a.m. (p.m.)*

**Gozen (gogo) kuji yonjū  
gofun desu.**

A: *At what time in the morning  
do you leave?*

**Asa no nanji ni  
dekakemasu ka.**

B: *Normally at seven o'clock.*

**Futsū wa shichiji desu.**

## 28 Some other counters

(i) Money counters:

|         |                |            |                    |
|---------|----------------|------------|--------------------|
| 1 yen   | <b>ichien</b>  | 500 yen    | <b>gohyakuen</b>   |
| 5 yen   | <b>goen</b>    | 1,000 yen  | <b>sen'en*</b>     |
| 10 yen  | <b>jūen</b>    | 5,000 yen  | <b>gosen'en*</b>   |
| 50 yen  | <b>gojūen</b>  | 10,000 yen | <b>ichiman'en*</b> |
| 100 yen | <b>hyakuen</b> |            |                    |

\*The apostrophe here and elsewhere indicates that the pronunciation should be *senyen*, *gosenyen*, *ichimanyen*, etc.

'How much?' is **ikura**:

A: *How much is it to Osaka?*

**Ōsaka made wa ikura desu  
ka.**

B: *It's 2,000 yen.*

**Nisen'en\* desu.**

A: *How much did the ticket cost?*

**Kippu wa ikura  
kakarimashita ka.**

B: *10,000 yen.*

**Ichiman'en\* desu.**

(ii) People counters:

'One person' is **hitori**; 'two people' is **futari**, but from three people onwards the counter **nin** is used ('four people' is **yonin**). 'How many people' is **nannin**:

A: *How many came?*

**Nannin kimashita ka.**

B: *Four friends came.*

**Tomodachi ga yonin  
kimashita.**

(iii) Cylindrical things (e.g. bottles, pencils, legs):

Note the phonetic changes for **hon**: **ippon**, **nihon**, **sanbon**, **yonhon**, **gohon**, **roppon**, **nanahon**, **hachihon** (or **happon**), **kyūhon**, **juppon**, **jūippon** etc. 'How many?' is **nanbon**:

A: *Have you got any pencils?*

**Enpitsu wa arimasu ka.**

B: *Yes, there are two here.*

**Koko ni wa nihon\*  
arimasu yo.**

A: *How many bottles of beer  
did you buy?*

**Bīru wa nanbon\*  
kaimashita ka.**

B: *Six.*

**Roppon\* desu.**

(\* When counters are used alone no particle is required.)

(iv) Cupfuls, spoonfuls:

The phonetic changes for **hai** are the same as for **hon**. 'How many (spoonfuls/cupfuls)?' is **nanbai**:

A: *How many spoons of sugar  
shall I put in?*

**Satō wa nanbai iremashō  
ka.**

B: *Two spoons for me, please.*

**Nihai kudasai.**

(v) Flat things (e.g. sheets of paper, stamps, slices of bread):

The counter is **mai**. 'How many?' is **nanmai**:

A: *How many pieces of paper?*

**Kami wa nanmai desu ka.**

B: *Seven please.*

**Nanamai kudasai.**

(vi) Books, magazines:

The counter is **satsu**. Note the phonetic changes with 1, 11, etc. (**issatsu**, **jūissatsu**), and 10, 20, etc. (**jussatsu**, **nijussatsu**). 'How many books?' is **nansatsu**:

A: *I borrowed seven books.*

**Hon o nanasatsu  
karimashita.**

B: *How many?*

**Nansatsu desu ka.**

(vii) Times; floors (of a building):

The counter is **kai**. Note the phonetic changes in 1 floor/time (**ikkai**), 6 floors/times (**rokkai**), and 10 floors/times (**jukkai**). 'How many floors/times?' is **nankai**:

A: *How many times have you seen that film?*      **Ano eiga o nankai mimashita ka.**

B: *Twice.*      **Nikai mimashita.**

A: *Excuse me, what floor is the toy department?*      **Sumimasen. O-mocha uriba wa nankai desu ka.**

B: *It's on the sixth floor.*      **Rokkai de gozaimasu.**

Other counters will be introduced later. For things which don't have their own counter you'll need the Japanese number system.

## Exercise 7

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 'How many went with you?' 'I went alone.'
- 2 Ten 60-yen stamps please.
- 3 'How much is it to Nagasaki from here?' '20,000 yen.'
- 4 I phoned him ten times.
- 5 My telephone number is 654 2908\*.

(\* This would read **roku go yon no ni kyū zero hachi.**)

## 29 Numbers (Japanese)

You need to know Japanese numbers up to 10 (thereafter the Chinese system is used). Japanese numbers are used for counting tables, chairs, boxes, fruit and vegetables and other things which don't have counters of their own. (You may well hear the Japanese system used for items which do have counters as well!)

Learn the numbers, all of which, except for 10, are almost always found with the suffix **tsu**:

|   |                |    |                  |
|---|----------------|----|------------------|
| 1 | <b>hitotsu</b> | 7  | <b>nanatsu</b>   |
| 2 | <b>futatsu</b> | 8  | <b>yattsu</b>    |
| 3 | <b>mittsu</b>  | 9  | <b>kokonotsu</b> |
| 4 | <b>yottsu</b>  | 10 | <b>tō</b>        |
| 5 | <b>itsutsu</b> | 11 | <b>jūichi</b>    |
| 6 | <b>muttsu</b>  | 12 | <b>jūni</b>      |

'How many' is **ikutsu**:

*I bought three chairs and a table in the sale.*

**Isu o mittsu to tēburu o hitotsu bāgen sēru de kaimashita.**

A: *How many suitcases have you got?*

**Sūsukēsu wa ikutsu arimasu ka.**

B: *Three.*

**Mittsu arimasu.**

Japanese numbers are also used for counting age (20 is **hatachi**). 'How old' is (**o-**)**ikutsu**:

A: *How old is he?*      **Ikutsu desu ka.**

B: *He's eight.*      **Yattsu desu.**

**Sai** with the Chinese system is also used for age. Note phonetic changes with 1 (**issai**), 8 (**hassai**), 10 (**jussai**). 'How old' is **nansai**:

A: *How old are you?*      **Nansai desu ka.**

B: *I'm five.*      **Gosai desu.**



## 30 Ordinal numbers

Ordinal numbers (1st, 2nd, etc.) are made by adding **me** to any of the counters. Consider the following:

- A: *Let's take (J: turn) the second turning to the right.* **Futatsume no kado o mi e magarimashō.**  
B: *Let's make it the third.* **Mittsume ni shimashō.**

## 31 Dates (i)

The days of the month from 1st to 10th are based on the Japanese system. Learn the following:

|     |                  |      |                 |
|-----|------------------|------|-----------------|
| 1st | <b>tsuitachi</b> | 6th  | <b>muika</b>    |
| 2nd | <b>futsuka</b>   | 7th  | <b>nanoka</b>   |
| 3rd | <b>mikka</b>     | 8th  | <b>yōka</b>     |
| 4th | <b>yokka</b>     | 9th  | <b>kokonoka</b> |
| 5th | <b>itsuka</b>    | 10th | <b>tōka</b>     |

From the 11th to the 31st, the Chinese system with the counter **nichi** is used (**jūichinichi**, **jūninichi**, etc.) with the following exceptions: 14th, 24th are **jūyokka**, **nijūyokka**; 17th, 27th are **jūshichi**, **nijūshichinichi** (and not **jūnana**, **nijūnana**); 20th is **hatsuka**. 'What day/date' is **nannichi**:

- A: *What's the date today?* **Kyō wa nannichi desu ka.**  
B: *Umm, isn't it the 20th?* **Etto, hatsuka ja arimasen ka.**
- A: *What day shall we go back on?* **Nannichi ni kaerimashō ka.**  
B: *Umm, let's go back on the 10th.* **Sō desu ne. Tōka ni kaerimashō.**

## 32 Dates (ii)

Days of the week are:

|           |                  |
|-----------|------------------|
| Monday    | <b>getsuyōbi</b> |
| Tuesday   | <b>kayōbi</b>    |
| Wednesday | <b>suiyōbi</b>   |
| Thursday  | <b>mokuyōbi</b>  |
| Friday    | <b>kinyōbi</b>   |
| Saturday  | <b>doyōbi</b>    |
| Sunday    | <b>nichiyōbi</b> |

'What day (of the week)' is **nanyōbi**.

For months of the year use the counter **gatsu** (notice how this is added to a Chinese number, 1 for January, 2 for February, and so on):

|           |                    |
|-----------|--------------------|
| January   | <b>ichigatsu</b>   |
| February  | <b>nigatsu</b>     |
| March     | <b>sangatsu</b>    |
| April     | <b>shigatsu</b>    |
| May       | <b>gogatsu</b>     |
| June      | <b>rokugatsu</b>   |
| July      | <b>shichigatsu</b> |
| August    | <b>hachigatsu</b>  |
| September | <b>kugatsu</b>     |
| October   | <b>jūgatsu</b>     |
| November  | <b>jūichigatsu</b> |
| December  | <b>jūnigatsu</b>   |

'What month' is **ngangatsu**.

Years use the counter **nen**:

|      |                                   |
|------|-----------------------------------|
| 1868 | <b>senhappyaku rokujūhachinen</b> |
| 1956 | <b>senkyūhyaku gojūrokunen</b>    |
| 1984 | <b>senkyūhyaku hachijūyonen</b>   |

'What year' is **nannen**.

Consider the following:

- A: *In what year were you born?*    **Nannen ni umaremashita ka.**  
B: *I was born on the 13th of March 1956.*    **Senkyūhyaku gojūrokunen sangatsu (no) jūsannichi ni umaremashita.**  
A: *What day of the week is the 4th of April this year?*    **Kotoshi no shigatsu yokka wa nanyōbi desu ka.**  
B: *It's a Thursday.*    **Mokuyōbi desu yo.**

### 33 'Only'

There are two expressions for 'only' in Japanese: **shika** and **dake**. **Shika**, always used with a negative verb, is the more common. The particles **wa**, **ga** and **o** are omitted:

- I'm the only one here.*    **Watashi shika imasen.**  
*I've only got one 10,000-yen note.*    **Ichiman'en satsu wa ichimai shika arimasen.**  
*We're only going to Nara.*    **Nara ni shika ikimasen.**

**Dake**, like **shika**, follows the word concerned. It does not take the negative:

- A: *I only went there once.*    **Ikkai dake ikimashita.**  
B: *Is that all?*    **Sore dake desu ka.**

The two words together are emphatic:

- I'm only going to be here for a year.*    **Ichinen dake shika imasen.**

### 34 Miscellaneous numeral expressions

(i) 'About' – **goro** (used of time only), **gurai**:

- A: *At about what time shall we go?*    **Nanji goro (ni) dekakemashō ka.**  
B: *Let's leave at about six o'clock.*    **Rokuji goro (ni) dekakemashō.**  
A: *About how much does it cost?*    **Ikura gurai kakarimasu ka.**  
B: *It's only about 10,000 yen.*    **Ichiman'en gurai shika kakarimasen.**

(ii) 'A little' and 'a lot' – **sukoshi**, **chotto** and **takusan**, **amari**:

- Shall we have just a little sashimi?*    **Sashimi o sukoshi dake tabemashō ka.**  
*I ate a lot (of food) today.*    **Kyō wa gohan o takusan tabemashita.**  
*I didn't eat a lot today.*    **Kyō wa amari (takusan)\* tabemasen deshita.**

\* **Amari (takusan)** is used with a negative to mean 'not much'.

(iii) 'Some more', 'a little more' – **mō**:

- A: *Would you like some more beer?*    **Bīru wa mō sukoshi nomimasu ka.**  
B: *Yes, I'll have just a little bit more.*    **Hai, mō sukoshi dake itadakimasu.**  
A: *One more orange, please.*    **Mikan o mō hitotsu kudasai.**  
B: *Just (only) one?*    **Hitotsu dake desu ka.**

## Exercise 8

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'How many people came to your party?'  
'Only three (came).'
- 2 I'll have just one more glass of beer.
- 3 Roughly (about) when will you be going?
- 4 How many pieces of paper did you use for (ni) that?
- 5 This is my sixth glass of beer.

## CONVERSATION 5A

### Birthdays

A friend (A) asks John (J) about his birthday:

- A: Jon-san no tanjōbi wa itsu desu ka.  
J: Raishū desu yo.  
A: Sō desu ka. Watashi no tanjōbi mo raishū desu.  
J: Ē! Raishū no nanyōbi desu ka.  
A: Kayōbi desu. Jūshichinichi no kayōbi desu yo.  
J: Ē! Watashi wa hatsuka desu<sup>1</sup>.  
A: Jon-san wa nannen umare<sup>2</sup> desu ka. Watashi wa rokujūnen desu.  
J: Onaji desu.

## CONVERSATION 5B

### At the post office

Mrs Brown (C) asks the counter clerk (X) for stamps and postcards:

- C: Nanajūen no kitte o nimai ni<sup>3</sup> hagaki o yonmai kudasai. Sore kara kono tegami o Furansu made o-negai shimasu.  
X: Kōkūbin desu ka funabin desu ka.  
C: Kōkūbin de<sup>4</sup> o-negai shimasu. Sore ni earogramu o ichimai kudasai.  
X: Sore de yoroshii desu ka<sup>5</sup>.  
C: Hai, sore dake desu.  
X: Zenbu de<sup>6</sup> nana hyakuen desu ... Hai, chōdo nana hyakuen (o) o-azukari shimasu. Arigatō gozaimasu.

## CONVERSATION 5C

### At the station ticket office

Mr Brown (B) asks about trains to Kyoto:

- B: Tsugi no Kyōto-yuki<sup>7</sup> wa nanji nanpun-hatsu<sup>8</sup> desu ka.  
X: Kuji juppun desu. Ato<sup>9</sup> jūgofun arimasu.  
B: Sore ja Kyōto made otona nimai<sup>10</sup> o-negai shimasu.  
X: Katamichi desu ka ōfuku desu ka.  
B: Ōfuku desu. Ikura desu ka.  
X: Kyūsen'en desu. Hai, ichiman'en (o) o-azukari shimasu. Sen'en no o-kaeshi desu. Arigatō gozaimashita.

→



B: Nanbansen<sup>11</sup> desu ka.

X: Gobansen desu.

On the train, the conductor (C) comes round:

C: Jōshaken o haiken itashimasu<sup>12</sup> ... Kore wa Kyōto-yuki ja arimasen yo. Nagoya-yuki desu.

B: Shimatta! Densha o machigaemashita!

## Notes:

1. **watashi wa hatsuka desu**: lit. 'as for me, it's the twentieth'.
2. **nannen umare**: set phrase for 'What year were you born in?'
3. **ni**: 'and'.
4. **kōkūbin de**: 'by (air)'.
5. **sore de yoroshii desu ka**: 'Will that be all?'
6. **zenbu de**: 'all together'.
7. **Kyōto-yuki**: '(the train) heading for Kyoto'.
8. **nanji nangun-hatsu**: 'at how many minutes past what hour does it leave?'
9. **ato**: 'there are 15 minutes left'; **ato** followed by counter often means '... left'.
10. **otona nimai**: it is unnecessary to use the word for ticket. The counter alone makes it clear what is meant.
11. **nanbansen**: **bansen** is the counter for platforms.
12. **haiken itashimasu**: 'I shall look at your tickets'; **haiken itasu/itashimasu** is a humble form of **miru/mimasu**. See Chapter 20.

## Chapter 6

### MAIN POINTS:

Adjectives; adverbs.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) 'Your Japanese is good'; (b) A packed lunch.

## 35 Adjectives A (i)

There are two basic but quite different types of adjective. One is the **i** adjective (all adjectives of this type end in **i**). It is essential from the first to understand that **i** adjectives are quite unlike adjectives in English. Strictly speaking, they are verbs.

Take the sentence 'the car is fast'. In Japanese, the 'is fast' part is translated by the single word **hayai**. **Hayai**, then, means not just 'fast' but 'is fast'. These **i** adjectives, being strictly verbs, do not have singular or plural forms, nor any 1st, 2nd or 3rd person forms, so 'I am/you are/she, he, it is/we are etc. fast' may all be translated by the one word **hayai**. Study these examples:

*I'm young.*

*You're clever.*

*That is tasty.*

**(Watashi wa) wakai.**

**(Anata wa) kashikoi.**

**(Sore wa) oishii.**

## 36 Adjectives A (ii)

It follows that to say 'it isn't fast', 'it was fast' or 'it wasn't fast', the present negative, the past or the past negative forms of **hayai** are needed.

The present negative of an **i** adjective is made by changing the final **i** to **ku** and then adding **nai**:

**hayai** → **hayaku** → **hayaku nai**. Cover up the right-hand side to check you can form the present negative of the following adjectives:

|                                      |   |                        |
|--------------------------------------|---|------------------------|
| <b>takai</b> (high/expensive)        | → | <b>takaku nai</b>      |
| <b>hikui</b> (low)                   |   | <b>hikuku nai</b>      |
| <b>yasui</b> (cheap)                 |   | <b>yasuku nai</b>      |
| <b>ōkii</b> (big)                    |   | <b>ōkiku nai</b>       |
| <b>chīsai</b> (small)                |   | <b>chīsaku nai</b>     |
| <b>nagai</b> (long)                  |   | <b>nagaku nai</b>      |
| <b>mijikai</b> (short)               |   | <b>mijikaku nai</b>    |
| <b>hayai</b> (fast/early)            |   | <b>hayaku nai</b>      |
| <b>osoi</b> (slow/late)              |   | <b>osoku nai</b>       |
| <b>omoshiroi</b> (interesting/funny) |   | <b>omoshiroku nai</b>  |
| <b>tsumaranai</b> (boring/tiresome)  |   | <b>tsumaranaku nai</b> |

The past (positive) of the **i** adjective is made by replacing the final **i** with **katta**: **hayai** → **haya** → **hayakatta**.

The past negative is made from the present negative by changing **nai** to **nakatta**:

**hayaku nai** (present negative) → **hayaku nakatta**.

Check you can form the past, positive and negative of the following:

|                               |   |  |
|-------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>yasashii</b> (easy/kind)   | → | <b>yasashikatta; yasashiku nakatta</b>     |
| <b>muzukashii</b> (difficult) |   | <b>muzukashikatta; muzukashiku nakatta</b> |
| <b>kitsui</b> (tight)         |   | <b>kitsukatta; kitsuku nakatta</b>         |
| <b>yurui</b> (loose)          |   | <b>yurukatta; yuruku nakatta</b>           |
| <b>katai</b> (hard)           |   | <b>katakatta; kataku nakatta</b>           |
| <b>yawarakai</b> (soft)       |   | <b>yawarakakatta; yawarakaku nakatta</b>   |
| <b>amai</b> (sweet)           |   | <b>amakatta; amaku nakatta</b>             |
| <b>karai</b> (spicy/hot)      |   | <b>karakatta; karaku nakatta</b>           |
| <b>samui</b> (cold [weather]) |   | <b>samukatta; samuku nakatta</b>           |
| <b>atsui</b> (hot)            |   | <b>atsukatta; atsuku nakatta</b>           |
| <b>warui</b> (bad)            |   | <b>warukatta; waruku nakatta</b>           |
| <b>ii</b> (good/nice)         |   | <b>yokatta; yoku nakatta*</b>              |

(\* **Yokatta** and **yoku nakatta** come from **yoi**, the old form of **ii**.)

All the adjectival forms above are similar, in terms of politeness, to the plain form of verbs. To make them polite it is necessary to add **desu**. Here **desu** has no meaning whatsoever, it simply makes the adjective more polite.

N.B. **Nai** in the negative examples is, in fact, the plain form of **arimasen**. It follows then that **hayaku arimasen** and **hayaku arimasen deshita** will be alternatives for **hayaku nai desu** and **hayaku nakatta desu**. Note here also that **de wa (ja) arimasen** and **de wa (ja) arimasen deshita** have rather more common forms in **de wa (ja) nai desu** and **de wa (ja) nakatta desu** respectively. Study the following:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| A: <i>What was it like? Was it interesting?</i> | <b>Dō deshita ka.</b><br><b>Omoshirokatta desu ka.</b> |
| B: <i>It was very interesting.</i>              | <b>Totemo<sup>1</sup> omoshirokatta desu yo.</b>       |
| A: <i>Was the meal tasty?</i>                   | <b>Gohan wa oishikatta desu ka.</b>                    |
| B: <i>No, it wasn't very tasty.</i>             | <b>Amari<sup>2</sup> oishiku nakatta desu yo.</b>      |

(1. **totemo** – 'very' in positive sentences; 2. **amari** – 'very' in negative sentences)

## 37 Adjectives A (iii)

The *i* adjectives are used before nouns. Even in polite speech, though, *desu* is not added to the *i* adjective in the pre-noun position:

|                             |                         |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>an interesting place</i> | <b>omoshiroi tokoro</b> |
| <i>hot days</i>             | <b>atsui hi</b>         |
| <i>a nice person</i>        | <b>ii hito</b>          |

If you recall that *i* adjectives are really verbs, it is easy to understand that the above are probably more precisely translated as 'a place which is interesting'; 'days which are hot' and 'a person who is nice'. Bear in mind, then, that no such word as the English 'which', 'who', etc. is necessary:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>They've only got fish which isn't very tasty.</i> | <b>Amari oishiku nai sakana shika nai desu.</b> |
| <i>He's a person who is very kind.</i>               | <b>Totemo yasashii hito desu.</b>               |

### Exercise 9

Put into polite Japanese:

- 1 Today was very hot, wasn't it?
- 2 We went to buy some lacquerware, but they didn't have any.
- 3 This tea wasn't very tasty, was it?
- 4 The tall man is my father. The short man is his friend.
- 5 He's very kind.

## 38 Adjectives B (i)

The second major group of adjectives is grammatically a lot closer to English adjectives, since the verb 'to be' must be supplied. Below is a list of some common adjectives of this type:

|           |                |            |                  |
|-----------|----------------|------------|------------------|
| simple    | <b>kantan</b>  | rude       | <b>shitsurei</b> |
| disliked  | <b>kirai</b>   | ill, sick  | <b>byōki</b>     |
| famous    | <b>yūmei</b>   | strange    | <b>hen</b>       |
| liked     | <b>suki</b>    | stupid     | <b>baka</b>      |
| necessary | <b>hitsuyō</b> | unpleasant | <b>iya</b>       |
| polite    | <b>teinei</b>  | useless    | <b>dame</b>      |
| pretty    | <b>kirei</b>   | various    | <b>iroiro</b>    |

## 39 Adjectives B (ii)

The present positive plain form of these adjectives is made by adding **da**. The present negative, the past and the past negative plain forms are made with the appropriate plain forms of **da/desu**:

Present negative – **de wa (ja) nai**

Past – **datta**

Past negative – **de wa (ja) nakatta**

The present positive polite form requires **desu**, and the past positive polite form **deshita**. The present and past negative polite forms are made usually by the addition of **desu** to the plain form, i.e. **de wa (ja) nai desu**; **de wa (ja) nakatta desu**. Consider the following:

*It's simple.*

*Isn't she famous?*

*He was very rude.*

*It wasn't very quiet, was it?*

**Kantan desu yo.**

**Kanojo wa yūmei ja nai desu ka.**

**Kare wa totemo shitsurei deshita.**

**Amari shizuka ja nakatta desu ne.**



## 40 Adjectives B (iii)

This second group is known as **na** adjectives because when placed before a noun in the present positive tense only, they take the particle **na**:

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>a strange person</i> | <b>hen na hito</b>     |
| <i>necessary things</i> | <b>hitsuyō na mono</b> |
| <i>a pretty face</i>    | <b>kirei na kao</b>    |

Note that **na** represents the verb 'to be', and so the above can equally well be translated as 'a person who is strange'; 'things which are necessary'; 'a face which is pretty'.

When the adjective comes before the noun in all but the present positive, the appropriate plain forms of **da/desu** are used. Consider the following:

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>He's a not very kind person.</i> | <b>Amari shinsetsu ja nai hito desu.</b>           |
| <i>She's a very rude person.</i>    | <b>Kanojo wa totemo shitsurei na hito desu yo.</b> |

Note that three **i** adjectives function also as **na** adjectives. They are 'big' – **ōkii** or **ōki na**; 'small' – **chīsai** or **chīsa na**; 'funny' (amusing or strange) – **okashii** or **okashi na**:

|                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| <i>He's a big man, isn't he?</i>  | <b>Kare wa ōkii (or ōki na) hito desu ne.</b>  |
| <i>That's a small dictionary.</i> | <b>chīsai (or chīsa na) jisho desu ne.</b>     |
| <i>That's a funny story.</i>      | <b>Okashii (or okashi na) hanashi desu yo.</b> |

(In the final position, however, they all appear only as **i** adjectives.)

'Same (as)' – **(to) onaji** – is irregular. Before nouns, it does not take **na**, but in other ways it functions as a **na** adjective:

|                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| <i>It's the same camera.</i>       | <b>Onaji kamera desu.</b>                      |
| <i>It wasn't the same as mine.</i> | <b>Watashi no to onaji ja nakatta desu yo.</b> |

## 41 'Too ...'

'Too ...': remove the final **i** and add the verb **sugiru/sugimasu**; with **na** adjectives add **sugiru/sugimasu** to the adjective without **na**. **Amari (ni mo)** may precede the adjective:

|                                  |                                    |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>It's too tight, isn't it?</i> | <b>Kitsusugimasu ne.</b>           |
| <i>Isn't it too expensive?</i>   | <b>Amari takasugimasen ka.</b>     |
| <i>Isn't this too easy?</i>      | <b>Kore wa kantansugimasen ka.</b> |

## 42 Adverbs (i)

Two types of adverb are made from the two main types of adjective. With **i** adjectives, the final **i** syllable is replaced by **ku**:

**hayai** (quick/early) → **hayaku** (quickly/early)  
**ii** (good) → **yoku** (well)\*

\* **yoku** has the additional meaning of 'often'.

With **na** adjectives, add **ni**:

**kirei** (pretty/clean) → **kirei ni** (prettily/cleanly)  
**shinsetsu** (kind) → **shinsetsu ni** (kindly)

Consider the following examples:

|                                  |                                   |
|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>I bought it cheaply.</i>      | <b>Yasuku kaimashita.</b>         |
| <i>She taught in a kind way.</i> | <b>Shinsetsu ni oshiemashita.</b> |

'Become (get) ...' are made by adverbs and the verb **naru/narimasu** (become):

|                                    |                              |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>It's going to get cold(er).</i> | <b>Samuku narimasu yo.</b>   |
| <i>She's become pretty.</i>        | <b>Kirei ni narimashita.</b> |

Adverbs are used with **suru/shimasu** too:

|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Let's tidy up (J: make tidy) the room.</i>   | <b>Heya o kirei ni shimashō ka.</b>   |
| <i>I'll turn (J: make) the sound down (up).</i> | <b>Oto o chīsaku (ōkiku) shimasu.</b> |

## 43 Adverbs (ii)

There is another group of very common adverbs, many of which are followed by **to**. Here is a small selection:

|   |                                      |
|---|--------------------------------------|
| <i>Did you do it properly?</i>                                    | <b>Chan to shimashita ka.</b>        |
| <i>I slammed the window (J: shut it bang!).</i>                   | <b>Batan to mado o shimemashita.</b> |
| <i>I explained it clearly.</i>                                    | <b>Hakkiri setsumei shimashita.</b>  |
| <i>Let's have a leisurely cup of tea (J: Let's drink slowly).</i> | <b>Yukkuri o-cha demo nomimashō.</b> |

Finally note the following sets of adverb-related words:

|             |           |    |                 |
|-------------|-----------|----|-----------------|
| How?        | <b>Dō</b> | or | <b>Dō yatte</b> |
| In this way | <b>Kō</b> | or | <b>Kō yatte</b> |
| In that way | <b>Sō</b> | or | <b>Sō yatte</b> |
| In that way | <b>Ā</b>  | or | <b>Ā yatte</b>  |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>A: How do you write it? Do you write it like this?</i>           | <b>Dō yatte kakimasu ka. Kō kakimasu ka.</b> |
| <i>B: No, you don't write it like that. You write it like this.</i> | <b>Īe, sō kakimasen. Kō kakimasu yo.</b>     |

### Exercise 10

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'How do you go to school?' 'Me, I go by bus.'
- 2 She speaks very well, doesn't she?
- 3 'What about the size?' 'The size is just right.'
- 4 That Toyota is the same as my friend's.
- 5 Do you often go skiing?

## CONVERSATION 6A

### 'Your Japanese is good'

*Mr Brown's friend (A) congratulates him on his accent:*

- A:** Nihongo ga o-jōzu<sup>1</sup> desu ne.  
**B:** Ya, sonna koto wa arimasen yo. Mada mada<sup>2</sup> desu.  
**A:** Hontō desu yo. Hatsuen ga totemo kirei desu. Nihonjin to kawarimasen. Hontō ni kirei ni hanashimasu yo.  
**B:** Sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimasu.  
**A:** Yappari muzukashii desu ka, Nihongo wa<sup>3</sup>.  
**B:** Totemo muzukashii desu. Taihen kurō shimashita. Hatsuen wa wari to yasashii desu ga bunpō wa yayakoshii desu. Sore kara yomikaki mo taihen desu. Katakana mo hiragana mo kanji mo arimasu shi<sup>4</sup>. Hijō ni oboenikui desu<sup>5</sup>.  
**A:** Sore wa sō desu<sup>6</sup> ne. Kioku no mondai dake desu. Shikashi erai<sup>7</sup> desu ne.

## CONVERSATION 6B

### A packed lunch

*Mr Brown (B) and Mr Tanaka (T) buy a packed lunch on the train to Kyoto, from a sales girl (S):*

- S:** Maku-no-uchi, Sabazushi, Unagibentō ni O-cha, O-bīru wa ikaga desu ka.  
**T:** Maku-no-uchi (o) futatsu kudasai.  
**S:** Hai, Maku-no-uchi o-futatsu desu ne. Hai dōzo. O-nomimono wa?  
**T:** Watashi wa tsumetai mono ga ii desu ne ... Bīru (o) kudasai. Buraun-san wa?  
**B:** Watashi wa atsui o-cha ga ii desu ne.

→

- S: Hai, dōzo sen nihyakuen de gozaimasu. Hai, chōdo sen nihyakuen itadakimasu<sup>8</sup>. Arigatō gozaimashita.
- T: Maku-no-uchi wa hajimete<sup>9</sup> desu ka Buraunsan?
- B: Hajimete desu yo. Demo oishisō<sup>10</sup> desu ne. Dō iu mono ga haitte imasu<sup>11</sup> ka.
- T: Mazu gohan desu ne. Sore kara kono ki-iroppoi<sup>12</sup> no wa takuwan desu. Tsukemono desu yo.
- B: Ironna<sup>13</sup> mono ga arimasu ne. Kono akai no wa?
- T: Sore wa ebi desu. Hontō wa akaku arimasen. Akaku iro o tsuketa dake<sup>14</sup> desu. Ma, tabemashō. Itadakimasu.
- B: Itadakimasu. Kono hosonagai no wa ebi furai desu ne. Oishii desu. Kono sōsu o kakemasu ka.
- T: Sō desu. Chotto karai desu yo. Hoka ni wa<sup>15</sup>, kono kuroppoi no wa konbu desu. Omoshiroi aji desu yo.
- B: Mō onaka ga ippai desu. Takusan tabesugimashita<sup>16</sup>. Demo totemo oishikatta desu yo.
- T: Kore o tabete mite kudasai<sup>17</sup>. Umeboshi desu. Totemo suppai desu ga shōkafuryō ni saikō desu.

## Notes:

1. **O-jōzu**: 'you're good at ...'; **o** is added out of respect for the person addressed. **Jōzu** is explained in Chapter 12.
2. **mada mada**: here it means 'that's a long way off'.
3. **... desu ka, Nihongo wa**: 'Is it difficult, Japanese?'; the inverted order is common in spoken Japanese.
4. **shi**: 'and also'.
5. **oboenikui**: 'difficult to remember'; replace **masu** with the adjective **nikui** to make 'difficult to ...'; **yasui** makes 'easy to ...'. For example: *Is Osaka dialect hard to understand? Ōsaka-ben wa wakarunikui desu ka.* And, *That man's Japanese is easy to understand. Sono hito no Nihongo wa wakariyasui desu.*
6. **sore wa sō desu**: 'it is as you say', 'you're right there'.
7. **erai desu**: here it means 'good for you'; elsewhere it means 'great', 'outstanding'.
8. **chōdo ... itadakimasu**: lit. 'I take from you just the right sum'.
9. **hajimete desu ka**: 'is it the first time you've had ...'; **hajimete** is a very useful word, e.g. *Is this the first time you've been to Japan? Nihon wa hajimete desu ka.*
10. **oishisō desu**: 'it looks tasty', see Chapter 13.
11. **haitte imasu ka**: 'What sort of things are in it?'; for the **te imasu** construction, see Chapter 8.
12. **ki-iroppoi**: 'yellowish'; several adjectives have **-ppoi** added to them, but the meaning varies depending on the adjective used. One of the most common is **yasuppoi**, 'cheapo'.
13. **ironna**: 'various'; a very common abbreviated form of **iroiro na**.
14. **akaku iro o tsuketa dake desu**: 'they've simply coloured it red'.
15. **Hoka ni wa**: 'in addition', 'apart from that'.
16. **takusan tabesugimashita**: 'I've eaten too much'; just as **sugiru/sugimasu** can be added to adjectives, so it can to verbs, often with **takusan**, 'much'.
17. **tabete mite kudasai**: 'eat and see', 'try this'.



# Chapter 7

## MAIN POINTS:

Formation of the **te** form of verbs and adjectives;  
applications of the **te** form.

## CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Using the telephone; (b) On the telephone.

## 44 Verbs and the *te* form (i)

In order to make the **te** form, which has many applications, you will need first to distinguish three different types of verb: Group 1 verbs, Group 2 verbs and (thirdly) verbs whose **te** form is irregular.

- (a) A Group 1 verb is a verb whose plain form ends in the syllable **ru** and whose **masu** form is made by taking off the **ru** and putting **masu** in its place: e.g.  
**taberu** → **tabe** → **tabemasu**; **miru** → **mi** → **mimasu**;  
**iru** → **i** → **imasu**.

The **te** form of these verbs is made by replacing **ru** with **te**. Check the following:

|                                 |   |                 |
|---------------------------------|---|-----------------|
| <b>taberu</b> (eat)             | → | <b>tabete</b>   |
| <b>miru</b> (see/watch/look at) |   | <b>mite</b>     |
| <b>iru</b> (be)                 |   | <b>ite</b>      |
| <b>deru</b> (go out)            |   | <b>dete</b>     |
| <b>dekakeru</b> (depart)        |   | <b>dekakete</b> |

- (b) Group 2 verbs include all other verbs (except a small number of irregular verbs), i.e. verbs whose plain form ends in the syllables **u**; **ku**; **gu**; **su**; **tsu**; **nu**; **bu**; **mu**. Group 2 verbs also include some verbs which end in **ru**. There need be no confusion, however, since Group 2 **ru** verbs in the **masu** form become **-rimasu**. (All verbs are given in the vocabularies in both plain and **masu** forms, so you will know immediately which group the verb belongs to.) Compare the following:

**iru** → **imasu** (be, exist) – Group 1

**iru** → **irimasu** (be necessary) – Group 2

Below is a list of all possible types of Group 2 verbs and their corresponding **te** forms:

| <i>Plain form</i>        | <i>te form</i> | <i>Meaning</i>          |
|--------------------------|----------------|-------------------------|
| <b>kau</b> (kaimasu)     | <b>katte</b>   | buy <i>vt.</i>          |
| <b>kaku</b> (kakimasu)   | <b>kaite</b>   | write <i>vt.</i>        |
| <b>oyogu</b> (oyogimasu) | <b>oyoide</b>  | swim <i>vi.</i>         |
| <b>dasu</b> (dashimasu)  | <b>dashite</b> | take out <i>vt.</i>     |
| <b>matsu</b> (machimasu) | <b>matte</b>   | wait for <i>vt.</i>     |
| <b>shinu</b> (shinimasu) | <b>shinde</b>  | die <i>vi.</i>          |
| <b>yobu</b> (yobimasu)   | <b>yonde</b>   | call, invite <i>vt.</i> |
| <b>yamu</b> (yamimasu)   | <b>yande</b>   | stop <i>vi.</i>         |
| <b>kiru</b> (kirimasu)   | <b>kitte</b>   | cut <i>vt.</i>          |

- (c) Verbs whose **te** forms are irregular:

| <i>Plain form</i>     | <i>te form</i> | <i>Meaning</i>  |
|-----------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <b>da</b> (desu)      | <b>de</b>      | be              |
| <b>iku</b> (ikimasu)  | <b>itte*</b>   | go <i>vi.</i>   |
| <b>kuru</b> (kimasu)  | <b>kite</b>    | come <i>vi.</i> |
| <b>suru</b> (shimasu) | <b>shite</b>   | do <i>vt.</i>   |

\* **Iku/ikimasu** is irregular only in its **te** and **ta** forms (see Chapter 9).

Check you can form the **te** forms of the following assortment of Group 1, Group 2 and irregular verbs:

|  |   |        |
|--|---|--------|
| neru/nemasu (sleep)                    | → | nete   |
| kaeru/kaerimasu (go home)              |   | kaette |
| kaeru/kaemasu (change <i>vt.</i> )     |   | kaete  |
| arau/araimasu (wash)                   |   | aratte |
| isogu/isogimasu (hurry <i>vi.</i> )    |   | isoide |
| tatsu/tachimasu (stand <i>vi.</i> )    |   | tatte  |
| tateru/tatemasu (stand up <i>vt.</i> ) |   | tatete |
| suru/shimasu (do/make)                 |   | shite  |

## 45 Verbs and the *te* form (ii)

There are two negative te forms, both made from the negative plain forms. The negative plain forms and the first of the **te** forms are as follows:

Group 1 verbs:

| Positive plain form | Negative plain form | Negative <i>te</i> form |
|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| taberu (tabemasu)   | tabenai             | tabenakute              |
| miru (mimasu)       | minai               | minakute                |

Group 2 verbs:

| Positive plain form | Negative plain form | Negative <i>te</i> form |
|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| kau (kaimasu)       | kawanai             | kawanakute              |
| kaku (kakimasu)     | kakanai             | kakanakute              |
| matsu (machimasu)   | matanai             | matanakute              |

Irregular verbs:

| Positive plain form | Negative plain form | Negative <i>te</i> form |
|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------------|
| da (desu)           | de wa (ja) nai      | de wa (ja) nakute       |
| suru (shimasu)      | shinai              | shinakute               |
| kuru (kimasu)       | konai               | konakute                |

Check you can form the negative **te** forms of the following selection:

|                 |   |             |
|-----------------|---|-------------|
| suru/shimasu    | → | shinakute   |
| kaeru/kaerimasu |   | kaeranakute |
| kaeru/kaemasu   |   | kaenakute   |
| dasu/dashimasu  |   | dasanakute  |
| iru/imasu       |   | inakute     |
| kau/kaimasu     |   | kawanakute  |

The second negative **te** form is made by adding **de** to the negative plain form:

|         |   |           |
|---------|---|-----------|
| kawanai | → | kawanaide |
| shinai  | → | shinaide  |

N.B. This second form exists for all verbs except **nai** and **de wa (ja) nai**.

## 46 Verbs and the *te* form (iii)

Usages of the **te** form:

(i) 'Please ...' – **te** form plus **kudasai**; 'Would you be kind enough to ...?' **te** form plus **itadakemasen ka** (lit. Can't I get you to ...?):

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Please come with me.</i>  | <b>Issho ni kite kudasai.</b>                       |
| <i>Would you be kind enough to speak slowly?</i>                     | <b>Yukkuri hanashite itadakemasen ka.</b>           |
| <i>Would you be kind enough to wait there (for me) for a minute?</i> | <b>Asoko de sukoshi dake matte itadakemasen ka.</b> |

In the negative, only the **naide** form can be used:

|                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>Please don't talk.</i>     | <b>Hanasaide kudasai.</b>        |
| <i>Please don't tell him.</i> | <b>Kare ni iwanaide kudasai.</b> |

(ii) The **te** form is used to join two clauses together where English would often use 'and (then)'. Whatever the tense of the English verb which precedes the 'and', the **te** form stays the same. Its tense is supplied by the final verb. Study the following:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>This is my wife Chieko and this is my son Thomas.</i>        | <b>Kore wa kanai no Chieko de kore wa musuko no Tomasu desu.</b>      |
| <i>I went back home and watched the TV.</i>                     | <b>Uchi e kaette terebi o mimashita.</b>                              |
| <i>Let's go to a film and then have some sushi.</i>             | <b>Eiga ni itte sushi o tabe ni ikimashō.</b>                         |
| <i>She went out for a drink and I stayed behind.</i>            | <b>Kanojo wa nomi ni itte watashi wa uchi ni nokorimashita.</b>       |
| <i>Go straight along this street and turn right at the end.</i> | <b>Kono michi o massugu itte tsukiatari o migi e magatte kudasai.</b> |

The **te** form may also mean 'and so':

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>He caught a cold and (so) didn't come.</i>         | <b>Kare wa kaze o hiite kimasen deshita.</b> |
| <i>There were all sorts of problems so I gave up.</i> | <b>Ironna mondai ga atte akiramemashita.</b> |

(iii) 'After doing ...' may be expressed by ... **te kara**:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>What are you going to do after writing the letter?</i> | <b>Tegami o kaite kara dō shimasu ka.</b> |
| <i>What are you going to do after you get home?</i>       | <b>Ie ni tsuite kara dō shimasu ka.</b>   |

(iv) The **te** form is used adverbially:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>We went on foot (J: walking).</i>                                  | <b>Aruite ikimashita.</b>  |
| <i>Let's hurry there (J: Let's go there hurrying).</i>                | <b>Isoide ikimashō.</b>  |
| <i>I ran here from the station.</i>                                   | <b>Eki kara koko made hashitte kimashita.</b>                      |
| <i>(By) listening to the radio every day her English became good.</i> | <b>Kanojo wa mainichi rajio o kiite Eigo ga umaku narimashita.</b> |

## 47 Verbs and the *te* form (iv)

Many idiomatic expressions are made by adding **te** forms to **kuru/kimasu** and **iku/ikimasu**. Study the following carefully:

i) **-te kuru/kimasu**

|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Let's go and see (J: having seen, come).</i>                 | <b>Mite kimashō.</b>                  |
| <i>I'll go and buy some beer (J: having bought, I'll come).</i> | <b>Bīru o katte kimasu.</b>           |
| <i>I'll be straight back (J: having been, I'll come).</i>       | <b>Sugu itte kimasu.</b>              |
| <i>Let's go and get our coats.</i>                              | <b>Kōto o totte kimashō.</b>          |
| <i>Bring me the paper, please.</i>                              | <b>Shinbun o motte kite kudasai*.</b> |
| <i>I've brought my father.</i>                                  | <b>Chichi o tsurete kimashita*.</b>   |
| <i>What time are you coming back?</i>                           | <b>Nanji ni kaette kimasu ka.</b>     |

\* Note that **motte kuru/kimasu** is used of inanimate objects, **tsurete kuru/kimasu** of people.



(ii) **-te iku/ikimasu**

*Shall we eat first*

(J: *having eaten, shall we go*)?

*I'll buy some wine on the way*

(J: *having bought, I'll go*).

*Please take your umbrella.*

*I'll take him to the bus stop.*

**Tabete ikimashō ka.**

**Wain o katte ikimasu yo.**

**Kasa o motte itte kudasai\*.**

**Basu-tei made tsurete  
ikimasu\*.**

\* Again, note that **motte iku/ikimasu** is used of inanimate objects, **tsurete iku/ikimasu** of people.

## Exercise 11

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 I'm going to go and buy two postcards and six stamps.
- 2 Please sit there and wait.
- 3 They went to Kyoto, saw the Ryoanji temple and then came back.
- 4 'How many minutes does it take to walk?' 'I'm not sure. It takes about twenty minutes by bus.'
- 5 Will you go and get (J: call) your father, please.

## 48 Verbs and the *te* form (v)

The uses of the negative **te** form are similar to those of the positive **te** form. With **nakute**, often the sense is 'not ... instead', 'not ... and so':

*I didn't have any time so I came straight back home.*

*He's lonely as he hasn't got any friends.*

*It isn't today, it's tomorrow.*

*It wasn't me, it was him.*

**Jikan ga nakute sugu kaette kimashita.**

**Tomodachi ga inakute samishii desu.**

**Kyō ja nakute ashita desu.**

**Watashi ja nakute kare deshita.**

With **naide** the sense is often 'not ... instead' or 'without ...ing', but the subject of the main verb and the **naide** clause must be the same:

*Yesterday I went straight to bed without having a bath.*

*He left the shop without paying.*

**Kinō o-furo ni hairanaide sugu nemashita.**

**O-kane o harawanaide o-mise o demashita.**

## 49 Adjectival *te* forms

Adjectival **te** forms are used to mean 'and' or 'and so' (see the examples below, to understand the sort of context these words might appear in). The positive and negative **te** forms of **i** adjectives are formed respectively as follows:

**takai** → **takakute**

**takaku nai** → **takaku nakute**

The positive/negative **te** forms of **na** adjectives are:

**kantan** → **kantan de**

**kantan de wa (ja) nakute**

*It was interesting so I watched  
it from start to finish.*

*Something tasty and cheap  
would be nice.*

*This is a nice big room.*

*It's a nice and simple story.*

*\*kute/de ii is 'nice and ...'*

**Omoshirokute saisho kara  
saigo made mimashita.**

**Oishikute yasui mono ga ii  
desu ne.**

**Hirokute ii\* heya desu ne.**

**Kantan de ii hanashi desu.**

## CONVERSATION 7A

### Using the telephone

*Mr Brown (B) asks how to use a public call box:*

**B:** Sumimasen, denwa no tsukaikata<sup>1</sup> o oshiete itadakemasen ka.

**A:** Tsukaikata desu ka. Ii desu yo. Jūen dama wa takusan arimasu ka.

**B:** Etto, komakai no wa amari arimasen. Warui desu ga<sup>2</sup>, chotto kore o kuzushite itadakemasen ka.

**A:** Ii desu yo. Sore ja, mazu juwaki o totte, jūen dama o sanko gurai irete, bangō o mawashite kudasai.

**B:** Arigatō gozaimashita. Etto, mazu juwaki o totte, o-kane o irete, sore kara bangō o mawashite – 06 678 no 9809 desu ne – sore dake desu ne.

**A:** Sō desu.

**B:** Arigatō gozaimashita.

**A:** Dō itashimashite.

**B:** A, yappari hanashichū<sup>3</sup> desu. Mō sukoshi matte mata kakete mimashō<sup>4</sup>.

## CONVERSATION 7B

### On the telephone

*When he gets through to the Katayamas' house, Mrs K answers:*

**Mrs K:** Moshimoshi<sup>5</sup>.

**B:** Yabun osoku mōshiwake gozaimasen ga<sup>6</sup>, Katayama-san no o-taku deshō ka.

**Mrs K:** Hai, sō desu.

**B:** Kunio-san wa irasshaimasu ka.

**Mrs K:** Hai, chotto matte kudasai, yonde kimasu.

**B:** Sumimasen.

*Then his friend Kunio (K) comes to the phone:*

**K:** Moshimoshi, Kunio desu ga.

**B:** Kunio-san? Jon desu.

**K:** A, Jon-san. O-hisashiburi desu ne. Genki deshita ka.

**B:** Okage-sama de. Kunio wa?

**K:** Un, watashi mo genki deshita yo.

**B:** Tokoro de, Kunio, asatte wa hima desu ka.

**K:** Asatte wa doyōbi desu ne. Hima desu yo.

**B:** Sore ja, issho ni Kyōto made ikimasen ka.

**K:** Kyōto wa hisashiburi desu ne. Ii desu yo. Issho ni ikimashō.

**B:** A, yokatta desu. Kyōto no doko o<sup>7</sup> mawarimashō ka.

**K:** Mazu machiawase no jikan to basho o kimemashō.

**B:** Sō desu ne.

**K:** Ōsaka eki no chūō guchi de hachiji goro ni machiawase shite<sup>8</sup> 8 ji han no densha ni notte ikimashō.

→

B: Hai, wakarimashita.

K: Sore de wa asatte no asa no hachiji ni?

B: Hai, tanoshimi ni shite imasu<sup>10</sup>.

K: Sore ja, o-yasumi nasai.

B: O-yasumi nasai.

## Notes:

1. **tsukaikata**: 'the way (how) to use'; replace **masu** with **kata** to say 'the way to/of ...' cf. **hanashikata**, 'way of speaking'; **hashirikata**, 'way of running'.
2. **warui desu ga**: 'I'm sorry, but ...'.
3. **hanashichū**: 'engaged'. There are a great number of uses of **chū** (**jū**). Some are time expressions: **kaigichū**, 'at a conference'; **shigotochū**, 'in the middle of work'; **ichinichijū**, 'all day long'; **hitobanjū**, 'all night long'; **ichinenjū**, 'all year long'. Some are place expressions: **karadajū ga itai desu**, 'all over my body hurts'; **iejū ga kitanai desu**, 'the whole house is dirty'.
4. **kakete mimashō**: 'I'll try phoning again later'; **te miru/mimasu** means 'try doing', 'do and see'.
5. **moshimoshi**: 'Hello', used mostly over the phone.
6. **yabun osoku ...**; set phrase meaning 'I apologize for phoning late at night'.
7. **doko o mawarimashō**: 'Where shall we go round?'; **mawaru/mawarimasu** is a motion verb which takes **o**.
8. **machiawase suru/shimasu**: 'arrange to meet'. There is a large group of verbs formed by the addition of a noun (here **machiawase**) to **suru/shimasu**, e.g. **benkyō** 'study' → **benkyō suru/shimasu** 'to study'.
9. **hachiji ni**: 'See you at 8', informal.
10. **tanoshimi ni shite imasu**: 'I'm looking forward to it'. For **te** form plus **iru/imasu** see Chapter 8.

## Chapter 8

### MAIN POINTS:

Is/are doing, was/were doing; has/have done, had done; has/have been doing, had been doing; duration of time.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Asking a policeman; (b) 'What's on television?'

## 50 'Is/are doing'

'Is/are doing' is translated by the **te** form plus **iru/imasu**, **irassharu/irasshaimasu**, or **oru/orimasu**:

A: Are you listening?

B: No, I'm not.

Kiite imasu ka.

Īe, kiite imasen.

A: What's the Professor doing?

B: He's talking to a visitor.

Sensei wa nani o shite irasshaimasu ka.

O-kyaku-san to hanashite irasshaimasu yo.

'Was/were doing' involves changing **masu** to **mashita**:

A: What were you doing?

B: I was reading the paper.

Nani o shite imashita ka.

Shinbun o yonde imashita.

A: Who were you talking to?

B: I was talking to my teacher.

Dare to hanashite imashita ka.

Sensei to hanashite imashita.



In English, we don't necessarily use an 'ing' form to describe a continuing state of affairs: we say 'I love you' and not 'I'm loving you', and we may say 'I live here' as well as 'I'm living here'. In Japanese, however, if the state is continuing at the time of speaking, a **te imasu** form is generally used. Study some of the following:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>I love you very much.</i>           | <b>Totemo aishite imasu.</b>              |
| <i>I lived (was living) in Kobe.</i>   | <b>Watashi wa Kōbe ni sunde imashita.</b> |
| <i>He works (is working) in Osaka.</i> | <b>Ōsaka de hataraitte imasu.</b>         |
| <i>I remember that too.</i>            | <b>Watashi mo oboete imasu.</b>           |
| <i>My children go to that school.</i>  | <b>Kodomo wa ano gakkō ni itte imasu.</b> |
| <i>Is that writer still alive?</i>     | <b>Ano sakka wa mada ikite imasu ka.</b>  |
| <i>Do you know him?</i>                | <b>Kare o shitte imasu ka.</b>            |

**Shitte imasu** is unique – its negative form is not **shitte imasen**, but **shirimasen**:

|                                       |                                      |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>A: Do you know Kyoto well?</i>     | <b>Kyōto o yoku shitte imasu ka.</b> |
| <i>B: No, I don't know it at all.</i> | <b>Īe, zenzen shirimasen.</b>        |

**Motte imasu** is very common as 'have got':

|                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>A: Have you got any stamps?</i> | <b>Kitte o motte imasu ka.</b> |
| <i>B: No, I haven't.</i>           | <b>Īe, motte imasen.</b>       |

There is a selection of intransitive verbs whose **te iru/imasu** form translates the idea of 'passive state': e.g. 'be closed', 'be open', 'be hungry', 'be thirsty', 'be crowded', 'be empty', 'be tired':

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>A: Are the shops closed on Sunday?</i>       | <b>Nichiyōbi wa o-mise ga shimatte imasu ka.</b> |
| <i>B: No, in Japan, they're open every day.</i> | <b>Īe, Nihon de wa mainichi aite imasu.</b>      |
| <i>A: Are you hungry?</i>                       | <b>Onaka ga suite imasu ka.</b>                  |
| <i>B: No, I'm thirsty.</i>                      | <b>Īe, chigaimasu. Nodo ga kawaite imasu.</b>    |

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>A: The trains are empty today, aren't they?</i>                | <b>Kyō wa densha ga suite imasu ne.</b>          |
| <i>B: Yes they are. But they're usually crowded, aren't they?</i> | <b>Sō desu ne. Futsū wa konde imasu kedo ne.</b> |

## 51 'Has/have, had done'

You know that both 'I bought a ticket' and 'I have bought a ticket' can be translated by **kippu o kaimashita**. A number of intransitive verbs, however, require the **te iru/imasu** form for their perfect tense. Below are some common verbs whose perfect form generally requires **te iru/imasu**:

|  |
|--|
| <b>iku/ikimasu</b> (go)                      |
| <b>kuru/kimasu</b> (come)                    |
| <b>deru/demasu</b> (come/go out)             |
| <b>hairu/hairimasu</b> (come/go in, enter)   |
| <b>dekakeru/dekakemasu</b> (depart, set off) |
| <b>tsuku/tsukimasu</b> (arrive)              |
| <b>kaeru/kaerimasu</b> (return)              |
| <b>neru/nemasu</b> (go to sleep, go to bed)  |
| <b>okiru/okimasu</b> (get up)                |

So, 'he's gone to (and is in) Nagasaki' is **Nagasaki e itte imasu**. (If, however, by 'he's gone to Nagasaki' you mean 'he's left for Nagasaki', then **ikimashita** will do!)

Study the following, noting that in some cases there are two English senses:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>A parcel has come (is here).</i>                | <b>Kozutsumi ga kite imasu yo.</b>       |
| <i>She's gone into (she's in) the garden.</i>      | <b>Niwa ni dete imasu.</b>               |
| <i>She's gone back to (she's back in) America.</i> | <b>Amerika ni kaette imasu.</b>          |
| <i>Have you got (are you) up yet?</i>              | <b>Mō okite imasu ka.</b>                |
| <i>She's been on TV a lot recently.</i>            | <b>Saikin yoku terebi ni dete imasu.</b> |

The most common way to say 'is in ...' is ... (no naka) ni haitte imasu (lit.: having entered, is in):

- A: *My passport was in my pocket.* Pasupōto wa poketto no naka ni haitte imashita yo.  
B: *Isn't it in your bag?* Kaban no naka ni haitte imasen ka.

The negative perfect of all verbs is translated by the *te iru/imasu* form, often with *mada*, 'not yet':

- A *Haven't you seen Kurosawa's new film?* Kurosawa no atarashii eiga wa mite imasen ka.  
B: *No, I haven't seen it yet.* Mada mite imasen yo.

## Exercise 12

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Don't you remember that song by Nakajima Miyuki?' 'No, I don't.'
- 2 'Which university do you go to?' 'I don't go to university, I'm working.'
- 3 'Excuse me, but from what time to what time is the Post Office open?' 'I don't know.'
- 4 'Do you know the coffee shop next to the fish shop?' 'No, I don't.'
- 5 'He's gone back to his parents' place.' 'When did he go?'

## 52 Duration of time

(i) Years. Duration of years can be expressed with *nen* or with *nenkan*:

- A: *How many years were you there?* Nannen(kan) imashita ka.  
B: *I was there for five years.* Gonen(kan) imashita.

(ii) Months. For duration of months the Chinese system is used with the counter *ka* plus *getsu* (not *gatsu*):

|           |                              |
|-----------|------------------------------|
| 1 month   | ikkagetsu                    |
| 2 months  | nikagetsu                    |
| 3 months  | sankagetsu                   |
| 4 months  | yonkagetsu                   |
| 5 months  | gokagetsu                    |
| 6 months  | rokkagetsu                   |
| 7 months  | nanakagetsu                  |
| 8 months  | hachikagetsu (or hakkagetsu) |
| 9 months  | kyūkagetsu                   |
| 10 months | jukkagetsu                   |
| 11 months | jūikkagetsu                  |
| 12 months | jūunikagetsu                 |

- A: *About how many months did it take?* Nankagetsu gurai kakarimashita ka.  
B: *It took about ten altogether.* Zenbu de jukkagetsu kakarimashita.

(iii) Weeks. Duration of weeks is expressed by *shūkan*. Note the phonetic changes affecting '1 week' (*isshūkan*), '8 weeks' (*hasshūkan*) and '10 weeks' (*jusshūkan*). The interrogative form is *nanshūkan*.

- A: *How many weeks will it continue?* Nanshūkan tsuzukimasu ka.  
B: *About four.* Yonshūkan gurai.

(iv) Days. For duration of days the system is that for naming the days of the month, except that 'one day' is *not* *tsuitachi* but *ichinichi*. So, *both* 'the 2nd', 'the 3rd', 'the 4th' etc. *and* 'two days', 'three days', 'four days' etc. are translated by *futsuka*, *mikka*, *yokka* etc.

'How many days?' is *nannichi*:

A: *How many days did you spend there?* **Asoko de nannichi sugoshimashita ka.**  
 B: *We spent only three days (there).* **Mikka shika sugoshimasen deshita.**

(v) Hours and minutes. For duration of hours the suffix *kan* is attached to the o'clock times, while for minutes this suffix is not generally used:

One o'clock **ichiji**  
 One hour **ichijikan**  
 Half past two **nijihan**  
 Two and a half hours **nijikanhan**

A: *How many hours did it take?* **Nanjikan kakarimashita ka.**  
 B: *It only took about ten minutes.* **Juppun gurai shika kakarimasen deshita.**

'Ago' is translated by a duration expression followed by *mae*, 'before':

A: *How many hours ago did it close?* **Nanjikan mae ni shimarimashita ka.**  
 B: *It closed about four hours ago.* **Yojikan gurai mae ni shimarimashita.**

A: *About how many months ago did you come to Japan?* **Nankagetsu gurai mae ni Nihon ni kimashita ka.**  
 B: *Umm, I came about three months ago.* **Etto, sankagetsu gurai mae ni kimashita.**

## 53 'Has/have been doing'

'I have been studying Japanese for three months' may be expressed in two ways, either with *sankagetsu* or *sankagetsu mae kara*. 'How long ...' is *dore gurai*, or *itsu kara*. Study the following:

A: *How long have you been studying Japanese?* **Dore gurai Nihongo o benkyō shite imasu ka.**  
 B: *I've only been studying for three months.* **Sankagetsu shika benkyō shite imasen yo.**

A: *How long has the Professor been married?* **Sensei wa itsu kara kekkon shite irasshaimasu ka.**  
 B: *He's been married for about five years.* **Gonen gurai mae kara kekkon shite irasshaimasu.**

For 'had been doing' change *masu* to *mashita*:

*I had been (was) waiting for six hours.* **Rokujikan mo matte imashita.**

In 'I've been living here since April', 'since' is *kara*:

A: *Since when (how long) have you been living in Japan?* **Itsu kara Nihon ni sunde imasu ka.**  
 B: *I've been living here since April.* **Shigatsu kara koko ni sunde imasu.**

*Da/desu* and *iru/imasu* do not have *te imasu* forms, so:

A: *How long have you been ill?* **Itsu kara byōki desu ka.**  
 B: *For about ten days.* **Tōka gurai (mae kara) desu.**

Such expressions as 'have you ever been (to Nagasaki)?' require a different construction altogether and are explained in Chapter 15.



## Exercise 13

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'How long have you been practising calligraphy?'  
'For about six years.'
- 2 We go on holiday in June (of) every year for three weeks.
- 3 How long have you been in this beautiful country?
- 4 Being busy, I haven't read it yet.
- 5 They've been married for forty-five years.

## CONVERSATION 8A

### Asking a policeman

Mr Brown (B) asks first a passer-by (P), then a policeman (K: keisatsukan) how to find a bank:

B: Sumimasen, ginkō o sagashite imasu ga kono hen ni nai desu ka.

P: Kono hen wa yoku shirimasen ga. Ano keisatsukan ni kiite mite<sup>1</sup> kudasai.

B: Arigatō gozaimasu. Chotto ukagaimasu ga<sup>2</sup> ginkō wa chikaku ni arimasu ka.

K: Sochira ni Dai Ichi Kangin<sup>3</sup> ga arimasu ga mō shimatte imasu yo. Nihon no ginkō wa gozen kuji kara gogo sanji made desu.

B: Ā sō desu ka. Dō shimashō? Komarimashita<sup>4</sup> ne.

K: Nihongo<sup>5</sup> ga o-jōzu desu ne ... O-kuni wa dochira desu ka.

B: Kanada desu ga ...

K: Itsu kara Nihon ni irassharu n'desu ka<sup>6</sup>.

B: Etto, yonkagetsu gurai mae kara desu.

K: Gaijin tōrokushō<sup>7</sup> o chotto misete kudasai.

B: Chotto matte kudasai. Kaban no naka ni haitte imasu. Ā. Arimashita. Hai dōzo.

K: Arigatō. Gakusei-san desu ne.

B: Hai, sengetsu kara Hitotsubashi Daigaku de kenkyū shite imasu.

K: Sō desu ka. O-sumai wa Kunitachi desu ne.

B: Hai, sō desu. Ima no tokoro wa ryō ni sunde imasu ga apāto o sagashite imasu.

K: Naruhodo. Hai, kekkō desu.

## CONVERSATION 8B

### 'What's on television?'

*Mr Brown asks Mr Inoue if there's anything worth watching:*

**B:** Terebi de nani o yatte imasu<sup>8</sup> ka.

**I:** Mite mimashō<sup>9</sup>. Kuizu to ka dokyumentarī to ka. Omoshiroku nai bangumi bakari<sup>10</sup> desu.

**B:** Kyō eiga wa yatte imasen ka.

**I:** Etto, chotto matte kudasai. Yatte imasen ne. Ā, jidaigeki wa yatte imasu yo.

**B:** Amari kyōmi (wa) nai desu<sup>11</sup> ne.

**I:** Eigakan de wa Kurosawa no 'Shichinin no Samurai' o yatte imasu yo. Shitte imasu ka.

**B:** Namae dake wa shitte imasu. Dare ga dete iru n'desu ka.

**I:** Oboete imasen. Mifune ja nai desu ka.

**B:** Sō desu ka. Sore ja dō shimashō. Mi ni ikimasu ka.

**I:** Ima sugu desu ka. Gohan mo tabenaide?<sup>12</sup>

**B:** Ikimashō. Sore de eiga ga owatte kara dokoka<sup>13</sup> e oishii mono de mo tabe ni ikimashō.

## Notes:

1. **kiite mite kudasai:** 'ask and see', 'try asking'. See note 17, Chapter 6.
2. **chotto ukagaimasu ga:** 'I'd just like to ask you ...'; **ukagau/ukagaimasu** is a humble word meaning 'ask', 'visit', 'call on'.
3. **Dai Ichi Kangin:** abbreviation of **Dai Ichi Kangyō Ginkō**, the largest street bank in Japan.
4. **komarimashita:** 'That's a nuisance'; **komaru/komarimasu** = 'be stuck', 'be awkward'.
5. **Nihongo:** 'Japanese'; **-go** placed after the name of a country gives the language of that country, e.g. **Chūgoku** (China), **Chūgokugo** (Chinese). But 'English' is **Eigo**.
6. **irassharu n'desu ka:** the plain form with **n'desu** is a common alternative for **masu**, particularly in questions. See Chapter 9.
7. **Gaijin tōrokushō:** 'Alien registration card'; full name is **Gaikokujin Tōroku Shōmeishō**. The law requires that all non-naturalized foreigners in Japan for longer than 90 days must have and always carry one.
8. **yatte imasu: yaru/yarimasu** is a very common, if somewhat colloquial, alternative to **suru/shimasu**.
9. **mite mimasu:** 'I'll have a look and see'.
10. **bakari:** 'nothing but'.
11. **kyōmi wa nai desu:** 'I'm not interested', lit. 'as for interest, there isn't any'.
12. **Gohan mo tabenaide:** 'without even having a meal'; **mo** here means 'even'.
13. **dokoka e:** 'somewhere'; other indefinite expressions are studied in Chapter 14.

## Chapter 9

### MAIN POINTS:

Formation of the plain forms; some idiomatic usages of the plain forms: why ... because/probably/I wonder/may (be)/intend to/should

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Talking to Mrs Inoue; (b) 'My family'.

## 54 The plain form – Present

While in polite speech the main verb is best put in the **masu** form, the plain form does feature, for example, in subordinate clauses, in indirect speech and in a good number of idioms.

For such purposes, we must consider the formation of the various plain forms of Group 1, Group 2 and Irregular verbs. The present positive plain forms of all verbs are listed in the vocabularies together with the **masu** form. The present negative plain form you have already come across (refer to Chapter 7).

## 55 The Plain form – Past positive (the *ta* form)

All verbs (with the one exception given below) have their past positive plain form (the so-called **ta** form) made by changing the **te** (or **de**) of the **te** form to **ta** (or **da**).

| Plain form (present)     | <i>te</i> form | <i>ta</i> form |
|--------------------------|----------------|----------------|
| <b>taberu</b> (tabemasu) | <b>tabete</b>  | <b>tabeta</b>  |
| <b>miru</b> (mimasu)     | <b>mite</b>    | <b>mita</b>    |
| <b>kau</b> (kaimasu)     | <b>katte</b>   | <b>katta</b>   |
| <b>kuru</b> (kimasu)     | <b>kite</b>    | <b>kita</b>    |

The one verb whose **ta** form is irregular is **da/desu**. Its plain form (present) is **da**, its **te** form is **de** and its **ta** form is **datta**.

Check you can form the **ta** forms of the following:

|                          |   |               |
|--------------------------|---|---------------|
| <b>taberu</b> (tabemasu) | → | <b>tabeta</b> |
| <b>yobu</b> (yobimasu)   |   | <b>yonda</b>  |
| <b>kaku</b> (kakimasu)   |   | <b>kaita</b>  |
| <b>arau</b> (araimasu)   |   | <b>aratta</b> |
| <b>tatsu</b> (tachimasu) |   | <b>tatta</b>  |
| <b>da</b> (desu)         |   | <b>datta</b>  |
| <b>iku</b> (ikimasu)     |   | <b>itta</b>   |
| <b>kaeru</b> (kaerimasu) |   | <b>kaetta</b> |
| <b>kaeru</b> (kaemasu)   |   | <b>kaeta</b>  |

## 55a The plain form – Past negative

This is made from the present negative. To form the plain past negative, change **nai** to **nakatta**: **inai** → **inakatta**; **konai** → **konakatta**.

Check you can form the past negative plain forms of the following:

|                 |   |                     |
|-----------------|---|---------------------|
| <b>shinai</b>   | → | <b>shinakatta</b>   |
| <b>matanai</b>  |   | <b>matanakatta</b>  |
| <b>kawanai</b>  |   | <b>kawanakatta</b>  |
| <b>kiranai</b>  |   | <b>kiranakatta</b>  |
| <b>kaeranai</b> |   | <b>kaeranakatta</b> |
| <b>ikanai</b>   |   | <b>ikanakatta</b>   |

N.B. The **te iru/imasu** forms are changed into the plain form, as one would expect, by the appropriate plain forms of **iru/imasu**. Check the plain forms of the following:



|                     |   |               |
|---------------------|---|---------------|
| tabete imasu        | → | tabete iru    |
| owatte imasen       |   | owatte inai   |
| yasunde imashita    |   | yasunde ita   |
| nete imasen deshita |   | nete inakatta |

The remainder of this chapter is given over to considering some of the idiomatic uses of the plain forms.

## 56 'Why ... ?' 'Because ...' (i)

In questions, especially 'why' questions, the plain form of a verb or adjective followed by **n'desu** (or **no desu** in its less common unabbreviated form) is best. 'Why' is either **naze** or **dōshite**. **N'desu** has the literal meaning 'it is because', 'the thing is':

|   |   |
|---|---|
| A: <i>Why don't you go abroad?</i>          | <b>Dōshite kaigai e ikanai n'desu ka.</b> |
| B: <i>(Because) I don't have any money.</i> | <b>Okane ga nai n'desu.</b>               |
| A: <i>Why are you crying?</i>               | <b>Naze naite iru n'desu ka.</b>          |
| B: <i>(Because) my leg really hurts.</i>    | <b>Ashi ga sugoku itai n'desu.</b>        |

The plain forms of verbs and adjectives are used with **n'desu** not only in questions and answers. Generally **n'desu** has an explanatory or emphatic role, although sometimes it may simply serve to relieve the monotony of too many **masu** forms:

*(The thing is) I've got work to do.* **Shigoto ga aru n'desu.**  
*(You see) he's got no money.* **O-kane ga nai n'desu.**

If the verb before **n'desu** is **da/desu** or a **na** adjective, then, in the present positive, **na** (not **da**) must come before **n'desu**:

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| <i>The fact is, it's no good.</i>      | <b>Dame nan'desu.</b>      |
| <i>He's a friend of mine, you see.</i> | <b>Tomodachi nan'desu.</b> |

## 57 'Why ...?' 'Because ...' (ii)

'Because' or 'so' may be either **kara** or **no de** (the **te** form of **no desu**), the only difference being that even in polite speech **no de** is often preceded by a plain form, while in polite speech **kara** is generally preceded by the **masu** form:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>It's got late so I'm going to take my leave of you in a minute.</i> | <b>Osoku natta no de mō sorosoro kaerimasu.</b>                     |
| <i>It was my wife's birthday last week so we ate out.</i>              | <b>Senshū wa kanai no tanjōbi deshita kara gaishoku shimashita.</b> |

Note, however:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>As it's no good I'm going to throw it away.</i>   | <b>Dame na no de sutemasu.</b>                 |
| <i>I invited her because she's a friend of mine.</i> | <b>Tomodachi na no de shōtai shita n'desu.</b> |

### Exercise 14

Put into Japanese:

- 'Why did you buy two new suitcases?' 'Because I'm going abroad next week.'
- 'The thing is we got back late.' 'Why's that?'
- I've given up Japanese, you see.
- Why didn't you come?
- She's crying because her boyfriend has gone back to America.

## 58 Idiomatic expressions (i)

**Deshō** (plain form **darō**) means 'probably', and is often found with adverbs like **tabun** (perhaps) and **osoraku** (presumably):

|   |                                    |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <i>He presumably won't come tomorrow.</i> | <b>Osoraku ashita konai deshō.</b> |
| <i>They've probably finished now.</i>     | <b>Tabun mō owatta deshō.</b>      |
| <i>He's probably asleep.</i>              | <b>Tabun nete iru deshō.</b>       |

With rising intonation **deshō** has a meaning almost identical to **ne**:

|  |                            |
|--|----------------------------|
| <i>You'll be going too, won't you?</i>   | <b>Anata mo iku deshō.</b> |
| <i>There aren't any more, are there?</i> | <b>Mō nai deshō.</b>       |

**Deshō** cannot be preceded by **da**:

|                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>He's probably a policeman.</i> | <b>Ano hito wa keisatsukan deshō.</b> |
| <i>It's tomorrow, isn't it?</i>   | <b>Ashita deshō.</b>                  |

**Deshō ka (ne)** means 'I wonder if/whether':

|                                     |                            |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>I wonder if they'll come.</i>    | <b>Kuru deshō ka ne.</b>   |
| <i>I wonder whether they're up.</i> | <b>Okite iru deshō ka.</b> |

With a question word such as 'who', the meaning is 'I wonder who ...':

|                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>I wonder who wrote it?</i>         | <b>Dare ga kaita deshō ka ne.</b> |
| <i>I wonder where they bought it?</i> | <b>Doko de katta deshō ka ne.</b> |

## 59 Idiomatic expressions (ii)

**Ka mo shiremasen** attached to a plain form or to a noun translates 'may possibly be'. It is often used with adverbs like **hyotto suru to** or **moshi ka suru to** ('maybe'):

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>They may not sell it in this shop.</i>             | <b>Kono o-mise de utte inai ka mo shiremasen.</b>                        |
| <i>She may be pretty but she's not my cup of tea.</i> | <b>Kanojo wa kirei ka mo shiremasen ga watashi no shumi ja nai desu.</b> |
| <i>She may possibly be Japanese.</i>                  | <b>Hyotto suru to Nihonjin ka mo shiremasen.</b>                         |

## 60 Idiomatic expressions (iii)

**Tsumori da/desu** translates 'intend to' or 'mean to', and **yotei da/desu** translates 'plan to'. The negatives of both forms are **tsumori wa nai/arimasen** and **yotei wa nai/arimasen**:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>A: When do you intend to go to Japan?</i> | <b>Itsu Nihon e iku tsumori desu ka.</b>              |
| <i>B: I don't intend going this year.</i>    | <b>Kotoshi wa iku tsumori wa nai desu.</b>            |
| <i>I meant to phone but I forgot!</i>        | <b>Denwa suru tsumori deshita ga wasureta n'desu.</b> |
| <i>When do you plan to publish it?</i>       | <b>Itsu shuppan suru yotei desu ka.</b>               |

## 61 Idiomatic expressions (iv)

In English 'should' and 'ought' may either suggest an obligation or they can simply suggest expectation, as in 'It's gone nine o'clock, so the shop ought to be open by now'. **Beki (ja nai)** is used for the former:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>You shouldn't say that.</i>               | <b>Sonna koto, o iu beki ja nai desu.</b> |
| <i>I should have written it in Japanese.</i> | <b>Nihongo de kaku beki deshita.</b>      |

**Hazu** is used in the second of the meanings. It may also translate 'expected to', 'due to' and 'supposed to':

It's nine o'clock so the shop  
ought to be open now.  
The plane is due to arrive at  
about six o'clock.  
We were supposed to go too but  
the car broke down.

Kuji ni natta no de o-mise  
ga aite iru hazu desu.  
Hikōki wa rokuji goro  
tsuku hazu desu.  
Watashitachi mo iku hazu  
deshita ga kuruma ga  
koshō shita n'desu.

Compare the following:

The meeting was due to (was  
supposed to) finish at  
six o'clock.

Kaigi wa rokuji ni owaru  
hazu deshita.

The meeting is supposed to have  
finished at six o'clock.

Kaigi wa rokuji ni owatta  
hazu desu.

The negative form is hazu ga (wa) nai/arimasen:

They're not due to finish yet.

Mada owaru hazu ga nai  
desu.

## Exercise 15

Put into Japanese:

- 1 I suppose they've finished now?
- 2 We were planning to leave Japan tomorrow.
- 3 They may come tomorrow.
- 4 A book like that shouldn't be expensive, you know.
- 5 I meant to tell you but I forgot.

## CONVERSATION 9A

### Talking to Mrs Inoue

Brown (B) arrives for the first time at his friend Kunio's house,  
but as Kunio isn't back from his sports club yet, he is invited  
in by Mrs Inoue (I), who chats to him:

B: Konnichi wa, Inoue-san no o-taku<sup>1</sup> desu ka.

I: Hai, sō desu ga, Buraun-san de irasshaimasu ka.

B: Hai, sō desu ga.

I: O-machi shite orimashita<sup>2</sup>. Kunio wa mō sugu  
kaette kuru hazu desu no de dōzo o-agari kudasai.

B: O-jama shimasu. Kunio-san wa kurabu katsudō ka  
nanika<sup>3</sup> de osoku natta n'desu ka.

I: Sō nan'<sup>4</sup> desu. Mōshi-wake arimasen ne ...  
Buraun-san, kochira e dōzo. Tsumetai  
o-nomimono de mo o-mochi shimashō<sup>5</sup> ka.

B: O-negai shimasu.

Several moments later she returns:

I: Hai, mugicha dake desu ga dōzo.

B: A, arigatō gozaimasu. Tsumetakute oishii desu ne.

I: Buraun-san wa ato dore gurai Nihon ni irassharu  
yotei desu ka.

B: Sō desu ne, yoku wakarimasen ga, moshi ka suru  
to ato ichinen gurai iru ka mo shiremasen. O-kane  
shidai<sup>6</sup> desu.

I: Nanika go-kenkyū nasatte iru<sup>7</sup> n'desu ka.

B: Hai, anō<sup>8</sup> kindaishi desu ga.

I: A sō desu ka. Buraun-san wa dōshite Nihon no  
koto ni kyōmi o mochihajimeta<sup>9</sup> n'desu ka.

B: Sō desu ne, sore wa chotto fukuzatsu nan desu ga  
chichi<sup>10</sup> no eikyō ga atta kara desu ne.



## CONVERSATION 9B

### 'My family'

Kunio (K) comes home, and together they talk of their families:

K: Tadaima.

I: O-kaeri nasai. O-kyaku-sama ga irasshate iru no yo<sup>11</sup>.

K: Buraun-san, osoku natte gomen nasai. Mō chotto matte kudasai. Ima kigaete kimasu kara ... o-kā-san! O-tō-san wa?

I: O-tō-san wa mada kaette inai no yo. Hayaku kigaete 'rasshai'<sup>12</sup> ... Buraun-san wa go-kyōdai wa nannin desu ka.

B: Kyōdai wa sannin<sup>13</sup> de watashi wa jinan<sup>14</sup> desu.

I: Otoko bakari<sup>15</sup> desu ka.

B: Hai, sō desu. Ani hitori to otōto hitori desu.

I: A, sō desu ka. O-nīsan wa nani o shite irassharu n'desu ka.

B: Ani mo otōto mo kōkūgaisha ni tsutomete imasu. Futaritomo rainen Nihon ni kuru ka mo shirenai n'desu.

I: Sō desu ka. Sore wa tanoshimi desu<sup>16</sup> ne. Goryōshin mo itsuka Nihon ni irassharu<sup>17</sup> n'deshō.

B: Dō deshō ka. Chichi wa kuru ka mo shiremasu ga haha wa chotto muri desu ne. Hikōki ga kowakute ...

K: O-matase. Nan no hanashi desu ka.

I: Buraun-san no go-kyōdai no hanashi o shite ita no yo.

## Notes:

1. **o-taku**: 'house'; **o-taku** is a polite word for **ie**. As an adjective **o-taku no ...** can mean 'your ...'
2. **O-machi shite orimashita**: 'I was waiting for (expecting) you'; the stem of the verb preceded by **o-** and followed by **suru/shimasu** is one way to make the verb humble. (See Chapter 20.) Note throughout this conversation and the next, that Mrs Inoue, typically of women, uses very polite language to her guest.
3. **ka nanika**: 'or something or other'.
4. **sō nan'desu**: emphatic form of **sō desu**, 'that's right'; remember that **na** and **not da** comes before **n'desu**.
5. **O-mochi shimashō ka**: 'Shall I bring ...?'; see above, note 2.
6. **O-kane shidai desu**: 'It depends on the money' ... *cf.* **tenki shidai**, 'it depends on the weather' and **anata shidai**, 'it depends on you'.
7. **go-kenkyū nasatte iru n'desu ka**: 'are you researching (into) something?'; **nasaru/nasaimasu** is an honorific form of **suru/shimasu**, and **go-** is added to certain words to make them honorific (see Chapter 20).
8. **anō**: 'umm'.
9. **mochihajimeta**: 'begin to have an interest in'; replace **masu** with **hajimeru/hajimemasu** to mean 'begin to' (*cf.* **kenkyū shihajimeru**, 'begin to research').
10. **chichi**: 'my father'; in Japanese two different family terms have to be distinguished – (a) plain terms, (b) polite terms. The plain terms are used for referring to one's own family members; the polite terms are used for referring to others' family members. Those polite terms marked with an asterisk in the table below are also used in addressing one's own family members:

| <i>Plain</i>     | <i>Polite</i>  |                   |
|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| father           | <b>chichi</b>  | <b>o-tō-san*</b>  |
| mother           | <b>haha</b>    | <b>o-kā-san*</b>  |
| parents          | <b>ryōshin</b> | <b>go-ryōshin</b> |
| husband          | <b>shujin</b>  | <b>go-shujin</b>  |
| wife             | <b>kanai</b>   | <b>oku-san</b>    |
| brothers/sisters | <b>kyōdai</b>  | <b>go-kyōdai</b>  |

|                 |        |            |
|-----------------|--------|------------|
| older brother   | ani    | o-nī-san*  |
| older sister    | ane    | o-nē-san*  |
| younger brother | otōto  | otōto-san  |
| younger sister  | imōto  | imōto-san  |
| son             | musuko | musuko-san |
| daughter        | musume | musume-san |
| grandfather     | sofu   | o-jī-san   |
| grandmother     | sobo   | o-bā-san   |
| uncle           | oji    | oji-san    |
| aunt            | oba    | oba-san    |

Note that **oji-san** and **oba-san** are also, respectively, informal words for 'man' and 'woman'.

- irasshate iru no yo: no yo** is characteristic of women's speech; **irasshate iru** (honorific for **kite iru**) is used out of deference for Mr Brown; the plain form ending is used because mother is speaking to son.
- 'rasshai**: 'go and get changed'; an abbreviation of **irasshai**, the imperative of **irassharu/irasshaimasu**. The use of **rasshai** is characteristic of women's speech.
- kyōdai wa sannin**: 'I've got two brothers'; in Japan the speaker includes him/herself when counting numbers of brothers/sisters.
- jinan**: 'second son'; **chōnan** is 'eldest son', **chōjo** is 'eldest daughter', **jijo** is 'second daughter'.
- otoko bakari**: 'nothing but boys'.
- tanoshimi desu**: 'that's something to look forward to'; **tanoshimi** literally means 'enjoyment'.
- Nihon ni irassharu n'deshō**: 'they'll be coming to Japan, won't they?'. N.B. **irassharu/irasshaimasu** is the honorific form of both **iku/ikimasu** and **iru/imasu**, as well as **kuru/kimasu**. See Chapter 20.

## Chapter 10

### MAIN POINTS:

Verbs of giving and receiving; doing things for people; having things done.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) 'What shall we buy for him?' (b) 'Happy Birthday!'

## 62 Verbs of giving and receiving

Verbs of giving and receiving can appear rather complex at first, since the verb you use will depend on your understanding of the relationship between the giver and the receiver. For example, if you are either doing the giving or at the time of speaking 'feel closer' to the giver than the receiver, for whatever reason (the giver may be your relative or friend), then one verb will be used. If, however, someone else is giving to you, or to someone with whom you identify more closely than with the giver, then another verb will be used. In practice, this is not as complex as it sounds! It is important, though, to take care with verbs of giving and receiving as impoliteness can result from misuse.

## 63 Verbs of giving (i)

Both **sashiageru/sashiagemasu** and **ageru/agemasu** mean 'give'. They often have 1st person (I/we) subjects and may also have 2nd person (you), and 3rd person (he/she/they) subjects but only if, at the time of speaking, you identify more closely with the giver than the receiver.

For example, they will therefore be used if you were saying that you or your friend gave to someone else or that you or a member of your family gave to a member of another family, or that you or a member of your company gave to a member of another company.

The difference between **sashiageru/sashiagemasu** and **ageru/agemasu** is that the former is more respectful: **sashiageru/sashiagemasu** will therefore be used if you deem the receiver to be of higher status than the giver, or if, for whatever reason, you wish to show special respect to the receiver.

**Ageru/agemasu** is used when you deem the receiver to be either of lower status than or equal status to the giver. **Ageru/agemasu** may also be used when the receiver is of higher status than the giver provided that the receiver is not actually present, and provided that there is no one else present who may expect respect to be shown. As will be seen from the first example below, it's not normally thought necessary to use the more respectful forms when referring to (or addressing) members of one's own family.

Study very carefully the following examples, noting the speaker-giver-receiver relationships, and note too the difference between those sentences marked (a) and those marked (b): (b) rather than (a) should be used if you are speaking in the presence of the Professor himself or to his wife, or a colleague of his, all of whom would expect respect to be shown:

*I'll give this to my mother.*  
*I'll give it to you, Sir.*

(a) *I'll give it to the Professor.*  
(b) *I'll give it to the Professor.*

(a) *Kunio gave it to the Professor.*  
(b) *Kunio gave it to the Professor.*

**Haha ni kore o agemasu.**  
**Sensei, kore o sashiagemasu.**  
**Sensei ni agemasu.**  
**Sensei ni sashiagemasu.**

**Kunio wa sensei ni agemashita.**  
**Kunio wa sensei ni sashiagemashita.**

*Kunio gave Yumiko the paper.*

*Kunio, did you give Yumiko the paper?*

**Kunio wa Yumiko ni shinbun o agemashita.**

**Kunio, Yumiko ni shinbun o agemashita ka.**

In these last two examples, both Kunio and Yumiko are acquaintances of yours, but the use of **ageru/agemasu** indicates that you identify more closely with Kunio than with Yumiko.

## 64 Verbs of giving (ii)

Both **kudasaru/kudasaimasu** and **kureru/kuremasu** mean 'give', but they can never be used with a 1st person (I/we) subject. They are often used with 1st person indirect objects (i.e. when someone gives to me/us) and may be used with 2nd and 3rd person indirect objects (to you, to him/her/them) but only if you identify more closely with the receiver than the giver. For example, you could use them if you were saying that someone else gave to you or a friend of yours or that a member of another family gave to you or a member of your family, or that a member of another company gave to you or a member of your company.

**Kudasaru/kudasaimasu** is more respectful than **kureru/kuremasu**, so you should use **kudasaru/kudasaimasu** if you deem the giver to be of superior status to the receiver or if, for whatever reason, you wish to show special respect to the giver.

**Kureru/kuremasu** is used when you deem the giver to be of similar status to or of lower status than the receiver. You may also use it when the giver is of superior status to the receiver if the giver is not present and if there is no one else present who may expect respect to be shown to the giver. Study this selection of examples:



My mother gave this to me.      **Haha ga kuremashita.**  
 Kunio, will you give this to me?      **Kunio, kore o kuremasu ka.**  
 Professor, will you give me this?      **Sensei, kore o kudasaimasu ka.**

Did Kunio give this to you?      **Kunio ga kureta n'desu ka.**  
 (a) The Professor gave it to me.      **Sensei ga kuremashita.**  
 (b) The Professor gave it to me.      **Sensei ga kudasaimashita.**

As in the preceding section, example (a) you might say to a friend or fellow student, but you should use (b) if the Professor himself or his wife or colleague was present at the time or if you were addressing yourself to his wife or a colleague of his.

In the final example below, both Kunio and Yumiko are acquaintances of yours, but the use of **kureru/kuremasu** (as opposed to **ageru/agemasu**) indicates that you feel much closer to Yumiko than you do to Kunio:

Kunio gave this to Yumiko.      **Kunio ga Yumiko ni kureta n'desu.**  
 Kunio, did you give this to Yumiko?      **Kunio, Yumiko ni kore o kureta n'desu ka.**

## 65 Verbs of receiving

**Itadaku/itadakimasu** and **morau/moraimasu** both mean 'receive'/'be given' and may have 1st, 2nd or 3rd person subjects. The difference between them is that **itadaku/itadakimasu** is more respectful. It is used when you deem the receiver to be of humbler status than the giver, or when you wish to show special respect to the giver.

**Morau/moraimasu** will be used when you deem the receiver to be of equal status to or superior status than the giver. You may also use it when the receiver is of inferior status than the giver, provided that the giver is not actually present and provided that there is no one else present who may expect respect to be shown. Study the following examples, and note that the person from whom something is received may be followed by either **ni** or **kara**:

I got a letter from Kunio.

(a) I got a letter from the President.

(b) I got a letter from the President.

Did you get a letter from Kunio?

Kunio got a letter from Yumiko.

(a) He got a letter from the President.

(b) He got a letter from the President.

**Kunio kara tegami o moraimashita.**

**Shachō kara tegami o moraimashita.**

**Shachō kara tegami o itadakimashita.**

**Kunio kara tegami o moraimashita ka.**

**Kunio wa Yumiko kara tegami o moraimashita.**

**Shachō ni tegami o moraimashita.**

**Shachō ni tegami o itadakimashita.**

Again, (a) in each case you may say to a friend or colleague, but (b) would be preferred if the company President himself were present or you were speaking to or in the presence of his wife or a colleague of his.

In practice, you may well find that Japanese tend to use **morau/moraimasu** and **itadaku/itadakimasu** more than **kureru/kuremasu** and **utasaru/kudasaimasu**. That is, they may well prefer to say **kare ni moraimashita** ('I received it from him') rather than **kare ga kuremashita** ('he gave it to me').

### Exercise 16

Put into Japanese:

- 1 My mother gave me this for my birthday.
- 2 Professor, I'll give you this.
- 3 The President got a book from his wife.
- 4 Tom (i.e. my colleague), I'll give you this.
- 5 Did Yumiko give Kunio a present?

## 66 Having things done/doing things for others

The verbs for receiving and giving are used with the **te** form of verbs to mean 'having things done' and 'doing things for others' respectively. Basically the same rules apply to the use of these constructions as to the use of the verbs of receiving and giving when used alone.

### 66a Having things done

The **te** form of a verb followed by **itadaku/itadakimasu** and **morau/moraimasu** means 'have something done' or 'get somebody to do something'. The person who is made to perform the action (the agent) is followed by **ni**. Note that both forms may either mean 'get somebody to do something', or 'someone was kind enough to do something for (me)'. Study the following examples:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>I got my brother to help.</i>           | <b>Otōto ni tetsudatte moraimashita.</b>                                   |
| <i>I got the teacher to explain.</i>       | <b>Sensei ni setsumei shite moraimashita (or itadakimashita).</b>          |
| <i>Did you get Kunio to help?</i>          | <b>Kunio ni tetsudatte moraimashita ka.</b>                                |
| <i>Did you get the teacher to explain?</i> | <b>Sensei ni setsumei shite moraimashita ka (or itadakimashita ka).</b>    |
| <i>Kunio got Yumiko to help.</i>           | <b>Kunio wa Yumiko ni tetsudatte moraimashita.</b>                         |
| <i>Kunio got the teacher to explain.</i>   | <b>Kunio wa sensei ni setsumei shite moraimashita (or itadakimashita).</b> |

## 67 Doing things for others (i)

**Te kudasaru/kudasaimasu** and **te kureru/kuremasu** both mean '(be kind enough to) do something for somebody'. The recipient of the action is followed by **ni**. Consider the following examples:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>Kunio, would you pass the salt?</i>       | <b>Kunio, shio o totte kuremasu ka.</b>                                |
| <i>Teacher, will you explain this to me?</i> | <b>Sensei, kore o setsumei shite kudasaimasu ka.</b>                   |
| <i>Did Kunio help you?</i>                   | <b>Kunio wa tetsudatte kuremashita ka.</b>                             |
| <i>Did the teacher explain it to you?</i>    | <b>Sensei wa setsumei shite kuremashita ka (or kudasaimashita ka).</b> |
| <i>Kunio helped Yumiko.</i>                  | <b>Kunio ga Yumiko o tetsudatte kuremashita.</b>                       |

## 68 Doing things for others (ii)

**Te ageru/agemasu** means 'do something for others'. You are advised to exercise caution over its usage, however. Unless you are speaking to a very close friend or a child, it's best to avoid using **te ageru/agemasu** as this can sound patronizing. (N.B. When you are speaking to a child or a very close friend you are likely to be using the plain form.) Study the following examples:

|                              |  |
|------------------------------|--|
| <i>I'll help you, Kunio.</i> | <b>Kunio, tetsudatte ageru yo.</b>         |
| <i>Did you help Yumiko?</i>  | <b>Yumiko o tetsudatte ageta ka.</b>       |
| <i>Kunio helped Yumiko.</i>  | <b>Kunio wa Yumiko o tetsudatte ageta.</b> |

## 69 Doing things for others (iii)

There are two ways of saying such sentences as 'Professor, shall I help you?', and 'Kunio bought it for the Professor'. One is simply to use the **masu** form alone:

|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| <i>Professor, shall I help you?</i>       | <b>Sensei, tetsudaimashō ka.</b>      |
| <i>Kunio bought it for the Professor.</i> | <b>Kunio wa sensei ni kaimashita.</b> |
| <i>Shall I make some tea?</i>             | <b>O-cha o iremashō ka.</b>           |

The other (more respectful) way is to use a humble form of the verb. Certain verbs have humble alternatives. Learn the following:

|      | <i>Normal</i> | <i>Humble</i>    |
|------|---------------|------------------|
| do   | suru/shimasu  | itasu/itashimasu |
| go   | iku/ikimasu   | mairu/mairimasu  |
| come | kuru/kimasu   | mairu/mairimasu  |
| say  | iu/iimasu     | mōsu/mōshimasu   |

Most verbs which have no humble alternatives can be made humble as follows:

oshiemasu → oshie → o-oshie shimasu  
miseru → mise → o-mise shimasu

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Professor, shall I help?</i>             | <b>Sensei, o-tetsudai shimashō ka.</b>    |
| <i>My brother will show you the photos.</i> | <b>Otōtō ga shashin o o-mise shimasu.</b> |
| <i>Shall I ask (on your behalf)?</i>        | <b>O-kiki shimashō ka.</b>                |

## Exercise 17

*Put into Japanese:*

- I'll buy it for you, Kunio.
- Would you be kind enough to write your name here?
- I'll get him to come at six o'clock.
- Kunio got the Professor to pay.
- The President bought it for my wife.

## CONVERSATION 10A

### 'What shall we buy for him?'

*Two of Mr Brown's female students, Akiko (A) and Tomoko (T), who are good friends, discuss what to buy him for his birthday:*

- A: Asatte wa Buraun-sensei no tanjōbi deshō.  
Purezento demo agemashō ka.
- T: Sō ne<sup>1</sup>. Nani ga ii kashira<sup>2</sup>.
- A: Nihonteki<sup>3</sup> na mono ga ii n'ja nai? Sensu to ka furoshiki to ka.
- T: Sō ne. Kōkōjidai no tomodachi ga Mitsukoshi<sup>4</sup> de baito shite iru kara nanika ii mono<sup>5</sup> o sagashite moraimashō ka. Asoko wa nandemo takai kedo sukoshi yasuku shite kureru ka mo shirenai wa<sup>2</sup>.



## CONVERSATION 10B

### 'Happy Birthday!'

Chieko, Yumiko, Kunio and the Inoues all (= mina, M) come to Mr Brown's party:

K: Buraun-san ni kanpai shimashō ... Kanpai!

M: Kanpai! Kanpai!

K: Tanjōbi o-medetō gozaimasu<sup>6</sup>.

M: O-medetō gozaimasu.

K: Chotto supīchi demo shite kudasai yo,  
Buraun-sensei!

B: Supīchi desu ka. Sore ja, mina-san kyō wa kite kudasatte<sup>7</sup> hontō ni arigatō gozaimasu. Konna suteki na tanjōbi pātei wa hajimete desu. Oishii go-chisō o tsukutte itadaite, hontō ni arigatō gozaimasu. Suteki na purezento mo dōmo arigatō.

K: Purezento wa nani o moratta n'desu ka.

B: Sensu to furoshiki to hon desu. Sensu wa Chieko-san kara, soshite furoshiki wa Kunio to Yumiko-san kara desu. Hon wa Inoue-san-tachi<sup>8</sup> ni itadakimashita.

K: Tokoro de Buraun-san wa kyō ikutsu ni natta n'desu ka.

B: Sore wa himitsu desu yo.

## Notes:

1. **Sō ne:** familiar form of **sō desu ne**. Since Akiko and Tomoko are good friends, they use familiar Japanese, including some plain forms.
2. **kashira:** **kashira** here and **wa** below are characteristic of women's speech.
3. **Nihonteki:** 'Japanese': there is a large group of **na** adjectives formed by adding **teki** to nouns, e.g. **seiji** (politics), **seijiteki** (political); **keizai** (economics), **keizaiteki** (economic, economical).
4. **Mitsukoshi:** One of Japan's best-known department stores.
5. **nanika ii mono:** 'something nice'; **nanika** = 'something', see Chapter 14.
6. **tanjōbi o-medetō gozaimasu:** 'Happy Birthday'; **o-medetō gozaimasu** is used to congratulate on many different occasions, e.g. **akemashite o-medetō gozaimasu**, 'Happy New Year'.
7. **kite kudasatte arigatō gozaimasu:** 'Thank you for coming'; it is also possible to say **-te itadaite arigatō gozaimasu**.
8. **Inoue-san-tachi:** 'the Inoues'; **tachi** is a plural suffix.

# Chapter 11

## MAIN POINTS:

Indirect speech: indirect statements; indirect questions and commands; miscellaneous expressions.

## CONVERSATIONS:

(a) A Japanese inn; (b) A beer garden

## 70 Indirect statements

When quoting what someone says, thinks, replies etc., the 'quotative particle' **to** must be used. Consider the examples, noting the different word order:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>'It's six o'clock,' their mother said.</i> | <b>'Mō rokuji desu' to okāsan ga iimashita.</b> |
| <i>I said 'Good night'.</i>                   | <b>Watashi wa 'o-yasuminasai' to iimashita.</b> |
| <i>'I'm going to bed,' she said.</i>          | <b>'Nemasu' to kanojo wa iimashita.</b>         |

Here, the exact words the speaker used have been translated. A more common type of sentence is perhaps that where we relate indirectly what someone says (indirect speech) or thinks. There are a few rules to remember:

(1) The verb which precedes **to** is in the plain form.

|                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>I think he'll be home soon.</i> | <b>Mō kaette kuru to omoimasu.</b> |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|

(2) As a rule, the **te imasu** form of **iu/iimasu** and **omou/omoimasu** is used with 3rd person subjects.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>He says (that) he doesn't know.</i> | <b>Kare wa shiranai to itte imasu.</b> |
|--|--|

(3) Note that Japanese uses different tenses to English.

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>I said I wouldn't go (J: I will not go, I said).</i>            | <b>Watashi wa ikanai to iimashita.</b> |
| <i>He said it was interesting (J: It is interesting, he said).</i> | <b>Omoshiroi to kare wa iimashita.</b> |
| <i>I thought it had finished (J: It has finished, I thought).</i>  | <b>Mō owatta to omoimashita.</b>       |

## 71 Indirect questions

Indirect questions are sentences such as 'I asked *what ...*', 'Tell me *when ...*', 'Do you know *why ...*', 'Have you decided *where ...*'. Note once again the tenses:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>Shall I ask what time it gets here? (J: What time does it get here? Shall I ask?)</i>      | <b>Nanji ni tsuku ka o-kiki shimashō ka.</b>    |
| <i>Tell me where he lives. (J: Where does he live? Tell me.)</i>                              | <b>Doko ni sunde iru ka oshiete kudasai.</b>    |
| <i>Do you know why he left the company? (J: Why did he leave the company? Do you know?)</i>   | <b>Naze kaisha o yameta ka shitte imasu ka.</b> |
| <i>He asked why there wasn't any more beer. (J: Why isn't there any more beer? he asked.)</i> | <b>Dōshite biru ga mō nai ka kikimashita.</b>   |

Sentences such as 'Do you know *whether* (if) ...', are also of this sort.

'... whether ... or not ...' requires ... **ka dō ka ...** .

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>I didn't know whether or not you eat sashimi.</i>     | <b>Sashimi o taberu ka dō ka shirimasen deshita.</b> |
| <i>I don't yet know whether I'll go to Japan or not.</i> | <b>Nihon e iku ka dō ka mada wakarimasen.</b>        |

Da/desu after nouns or na adjectives in the present tense is usually dropped:

*I'll ask when it is.*

**Itsu ka kikimasu.**

*Do you know where it is?*

**Doko ka shitte imasu ka.**

'I think probably ... (I'm pretty sure)' is translated by **n'ja nai ka to omoimasu**, or **nan ja nai ka to omimasu** with na adjectives and nouns:

*I'm pretty sure we'll be on time.* **Ma ni au n'ja nai ka to omoimasu.**

*I think it'll probably be O.K.* **Daijōbu nan ja nai ka to omoimasu.**

## 72 Indirect commands

Indirect commands such as 'I told him not to go' may be translated in a number of ways. The first is with **kudasai** or its plain form **kure** (**kure** is less polite and will be used when the speaker says what he himself or someone of lower status was told to do):

*We asked them to come early.*  
(*J: Please come early, we asked.*)

**Hayaku kite kudasai to tanomimashita.**

*I told him not to go.*  
*He told me to help.*

**Ikanaide kure to iimashita.**  
**Tetsudatte kure to kare wa watashi ni iimashita.**

The second involves **yō ni** (lit. 'in such a way that') **iu/iimasu** or **tanomu/tanomimasu**:

*I told him not to go.*  
*We asked them to come early.*

**Ikanai yō ni iimashita.**  
**Hayaku kuru yō ni tanomimashita.**

If the person told or asked to perform the action is of superior status, then **te kureru** (or the even more polite **te kudasaru**) **yō ni** may be used:

*I asked the Professor to come at six o'clock.*

**Sensei ni rokuji goro kite kureru yō ni tanomimashita.**

*My wife asked the Professor to help.*

**Kanai ga sensei ni tetsudatte kureru yō ni tanomimashita.**

## Exercise 18

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 Ask him whether he knows where they live.
- 2 Would you be kind enough to tell me where they live?
- 3 We asked him to be here by lunchtime, but he said he'd be here by four o'clock.
- 4 The teacher told the students to stand up.
- 5 Did he ask her why she's going to give up Japanese?

## 73 'Call A, B'

'Call A, B' is **A o (or wa) B to iimasu**.

*A: What do you call this yellow thing?*

**Kono kiroi no wa nan to iimasu ka.**

*B: We call it 'takuwan'.*

**Takuwan to iimasu.**

Note the following:

*How do you say 'I love you' in Japanese?*

**'I love you' wa Nihongo de nan to iimasu ka.**



## 74 'An A called B', 'the fact that A means B'

'An A called B' is B to iu A. Consider the following:

|                                     |                                    |
|-------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A singer called Nakajima Miyuki ... | Nakaiima Miyuki to iu kashu ga ... |
| The film called 'Ran' ...           | 'Ran' to iu eiga wa ...            |
| The Japanese word 'ai'...           | Ai to iu Nihongo no kotoba wa ...  |

Nouns and adjectives may be followed by **to iu no wa** or **to iu koto wa** (the latter is only for abstract things) sometimes in the sense of 'what I mean by ...', 'what is meant by ...', but often with no extra meaning at all:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Japanese (J: as for what we call Japanese) is interesting, you know. | Nihongo to iu no wa omoshiroi desu yo. |
| Kanji are difficult to remember, aren't they?                        | Kanji to iu no wa oboenikui desu ne.   |

When **to iu koto wa** follows a verb or adjective it often conveys '(the fact) that':

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Did you know that he's left the company? | Kaisha o yameta to iu koto o shitte imashita ka. |
| I heard that she's getting married.      | Kanojo ga kekkon suru to iu koto o kikimashita.  |

'The fact that ... means that ...' may be translated by ... **to iu koto** (or **no wa ... to iu koto** (or **imi**) **desu**:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| The fact that the light's on means he's back home now. | Denki ga tsuite iru to iu koto wa kare ga mō kaette kita to iu koto desu. |
|--|---|

'That' in sentences such as 'the news that', 'the view that', 'a request that', etc. is translated with **to iu**:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Did you hear the news that there had been a terrible earthquake? | Sugoi jishin ga atta to iu nyūsu o kikimashita ka. |
| There was a call (saying) that he'd arrived.                     | Tōchaku shita to iu denwa ga arimashita.           |

Note how to ask 'what does A mean?':

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| A: What does the word 'shuto' mean? | Shuto (to iu kotoba) wa dō iu imi desu ka. |
| B: It means 'capital city'.         | 'Capital city' to iu imi desu yo.          |

## 75 Another word on *to omoimasu*

'I'm thinking of ...', 'I think I shall ...', 'I thought I would ...' are expressions which require the plain forms of the **marshō** ending in combination with **to omoimasu**.

Verbs in Group 1 have this plain form made in the following way:

taberu → tabeyō  
miru → miyō

Verbs in Group 2 have this form made by changing the final syllable (e.g. **-u**, **-ku**, **gu**, **-su**, **-tsu**, **-nu** etc.) to **-ō**, **-kyō**, **-gō**, **-sō**, **-tō**, **-nō** etc.:

kaku → kakō  
matsu → matō  
arau → araō

The irregular verbs are:

suru → shiyō  
kuru → koyō  
da → darō

Check you can form the plain forms of the following:

|              |   |        |
|--------------|---|--------|
| ikimashō     | → | ikō    |
| deshō        |   | darō   |
| sagashimashō |   | sagasō |
| haraimashō   |   | haraō  |
| demashō      |   | deyō   |
| kaerimashō   |   | kaerō  |
| kaemashō     |   | kaeyō  |

Consider these examples, and note that *ka* adds the idea of 'perhaps', 'might':

*I was thinking of giving up  
whisky.*

*I think I'll buy a radio.*

*I'm thinking I might go via  
Korea.*

*I think I'll perhaps go to bed  
now.*

**Uisukī o yameyō to omotte  
mashita.**

**Rajio o kaō to omoimasu.**

**Kankoku keiyu de ikō ka to  
omotte imasu.**

**Mō neyō ka to omoimasu.**

## Exercise 19

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 'What does the word *hakubutsukan* mean?'  
'It means museum.'
- 2 He was going out with her for a long time and then  
I heard they were getting married.
- 3 I'm thinking of perhaps coming back next year.
- 4 They said that they wouldn't come.
- 5 'What did you say?' 'I said "I'm tired and I'm going  
to bed."'
- 6 The fact that he hasn't phoned yet doesn't mean  
that he's had an accident, you know.

## CONVERSATION 11A

### A traditional Japanese inn

*Shortly after arriving in Japan Mr Brown (B) makes his first  
visit with Mr Inoue (I) to a 'ryokan', where they are met by the  
owner's wife (R):*

**I: Gomen kudasai.**

**R: Hai! Irasshaimase.**

**I: Sumimasen, heya wa arimasu ka.**

**R: O-futari-sama de gozaimasu ne. Hai, gozaimasu.  
Go-ippaku de gozaimasu ka.**

**I: Hai, sō desu.**

**R: Dōzo o-agari kudasai. O-heya e go-annai  
itashimasu.**

*They are taken to their room and wait for tea to be brought.  
Mr Inoue points to a low table in the middle of the room:*

**I: Buraun-san, kore wa nan to iu ka shitte imasu ka.**

**B: Oboete imasen.**

**I: Kore wa kotatsu to itte, shita ni hīta ga tsuite iru  
n'desu. Attakakute totemo kimochi ga ii n'desu.  
Dōzo suwatte ashi o nobashite kudasai.**

*Mr Brown points to the sliding paper door:*

**B: Inoue-san, ano doa wa fusuma to iimasu ka shōji  
to iimasu ka. Dotchi ga dotchi ka' mata  
wasuremashita.**

**I: Are wa fusuma desu yo. Shikashi, Nihonma de  
ichiban omoshiroi no wa<sup>2</sup> Buraun-san no ushiro ni  
aru n'desu. Tokonoma to iu tokoro desu yo. Asoko  
ni kakejiku toka hana toka o oku n'desu.**

**B: Sō desu ka. Suteki desu ne. Kakejiku wa 'scroll' to  
iu imi deshita ne.**

→

I: Sō desu. Shikashi kono kakejiku ni nan to kaite aru no ka watashi ni sappari wakarimasen<sup>3</sup>. Ji ga furukute totemo yominikui desu ne.

R: Shitsurei shimasu!

## CONVERSATION 11B

### A beer garden

*Mr Murata (M) is waiting at a beer garden for Mr Brown (B) and others to appear:*

B: Osoku natte mōshiwake nai desu. Basho (o) shitte iru ka to omotta n'desu ga kekkyoku wakaranakute keisatsukan ni oshiete moratta n'desu.

M: Warukatta desu<sup>4</sup> ne.

B: Tonde mo arimasen. Nakanaka ii tokoro desu ne. Inoue-san wa? Kuru to itte ita deshō.

M: N, kuji ni natta kara mō chotto de<sup>5</sup> kuru to omoimasu ga.

B: Yamamoto-san wa?

M: Yamamoto-san wa nē okā-san ga kinō nyūin shita no de kyō wa chotto muri<sup>6</sup> nan ja nai ka to omoimasu yo.

B: Taihen desu ne. Katayama-san wa?

M: Iya, Katayama-san wa kaisha no yōji de osoku naru darō to itte imashita. Hatashite kuru ka dō ka wakarimasen ga.

B: Sō desu ka. Kinō watashi wa Sumisu-san ni kyō kuru yō ni itta n'desu ga kyō wa muri da to itte imashita yo!

M: Zannen desu ne. Jā, sannin dake de nomimashō!  
*To the waiter: Sumimasen! Bīru o kudasai!*

## Notes:

1. **Dotchi ga dotchi ka ...:** 'I've forgotten which is which'; **dotchi** is an abbreviation of **dochira**.
2. **de ichiban omoshiroi no wa:** 'the most interesting thing in a Japanese room is ...'. Superlatives are dealt with in Chapter 16.
3. **nan to kaite aru ka ...:** 'I've no idea what is written on it'; **te aru/arimasu** is dealt with in Chapter 19.
4. **Warukatta:** here, it means 'I'm sorry'.
5. **mō chotto de:** 'in a moment', 'before long'.
6. **muri:** here, 'impossible'.



## Chapter 12

### MAIN POINTS:

like/dislike; want to do; want someone to do; more on **wa** and **ga**; more on **naru** and **narimasu**; more on **yō ni**

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Likes and dislikes; (b) 'What sports are you good at?'

## 76 'Like/dislike'

The **na** adjectives **suki** ('liked') and **kirai** ('disliked') are normally used in place of a verb. 'A likes B' and 'A dislikes B' are **A wa B ga suki desu** and **A wa B ga kirai desu**:

*My wife likes jazz. (J: As for my wife, jazz is liked.)* **Kanai wa jazu ga suki desu.**

*I dislike manju.*

**Watashi wa manjū ga kirai desu.**

The subject is omitted when the context makes clear who or what this is:

*A: Do you like Japanese food?* **Washoku ga suki desu ka.**

*B: Yes, I do, very much.* **Hai, totemo suki desu.**

'Really like' and 'really loathe' are **daisuki** and **daikirai** respectively. When referring to people one likes and dislikes **no koto ga** is often used:

*You really like her, don't you?* **Kanojo no koto ga daisuki desu ne.**

*I really loathe that song.* **Ano uta ga daikirai desu.**

In the negative, and when two things are being contrasted, and when replying to a question using **wa**, the object of the like or dislike may be followed by **wa** and not **ga**:

*I don't like the rainy season in Japan.* **Nihon no tsuyu wa suki ja arimasen.**

*I like Japanese magazines, but I don't like Japanese comics.* **Nihon no zasshi wa suki desu ga manga wa suki ja arimasen.**

*A: What about some beer?* **Bīru wa ikaga desu ka.**  
*B: I don't like beer.* **Bīru wa suki ja nai n'desu.**

Both **suki** and **kirai** are **na** adjectives and can of course be placed before nouns:

*... a drink which I (etc.) like* **... suki na nomimono ...**

*(J: a liked drink) ...*

*... a person I don't like ...* **... kirai na hito ...**

To clarify who is doing the liking in such expressions, add the pronoun plus **no**:

*There is no food which I don't like.* **Watashi no kirai na tabemono wa nai desu.**

*What is the food he likes?* **Kare no suki na tabemono wa nan desu ka.**

## 77 Some other *wa/ga* expressions

'A is good at B' and 'A is bad at B' are **A wa B ga jōzu desu** and **A wa B ga heta desu**:

*He was very good at the guitar.* **Kare wa gitā ga totemo jōzu deshita.**

*Mrs Suzuki is not useless at singing.* **Suzuki-san wa uta ga heta ja arimasen.**

**Jōzu** and **heta** are both **na** adjectives and are to be found before nouns:

Sports he's good at are judo and baseball. **Kare no jōzu na spotsu wa jūdō to yakyū desu.**  
 Languages she's not good at are French and German. **Kanojo no heta na kotoba wa Furansugo to Doitsugo desu.**

Other very common **wa/ga** constructions include **wakaru/wakarimasu** 'understand':

She understands Japanese well. **(Kanojo wa) Nihongo ga yoku wakarimasu.**  
 Do you understand the meaning of that joke? **(Anata wa) sono jōdan no imi ga wakarimasu ka.**

and **dekiru/dekimasu** 'can (do)':

Mr Suzuki's son can do kendo. **Suzuki-san no musuko wa kendō ga dekimasu.**  
 A: Can you do (speak) English? **(Anata wa) Eigo ga dekimasu ka.**  
 B: Just a little. **Sukoshi dake dekimasu.**

and, of course, **aru/arimasu**:

Have you got any money? (J: As for you, is there any money?) **(Anata wa) o-kane ga arimasu ka.**  
 I haven't got a ticket. **Watashi wa kippu ga arimasen.**

Note here that you can say either 'as for **A**, its **B** is ...', or '**A**'s **B** is ...'. Compare the following:

The cost of living in Tokyo is high. **(a) Tōkyō wa bukka ga takai desu.**  
**(a) Tōkyō no bukka wa takai desu.**  
 Japan's population is great. **(a) Nihon wa jinkō ga ōi desu.**  
**(b) Nihon no jinkō wa ōi desu.**

In all of the above, **wa** will **generally** replace **ga** when the word before **ga** is being contrasted with something else, when the sentence is negative, and when a reply is being made to a question which uses **wa**:

He's good at judo but he's no good at kendo. **Jūdō wa jōzu desu ga kendō wa heta desu.**  
 I can't speak Japanese, you know. **Nihongo wa dekimasen yo.**  
 A: What about the money? **O-kane wa?**  
 B: I've got the money. **O-kane wa arimasu yo.**

## 78 'Want something'/'need something'

The adjective **hoshii** ('desired') is used for 'want something':

I want a cigarette. (J: As for me, a cigarette is desired.) **Watashi wa tabako ga hoshii desu.**  
 Do you want a bit more money? **Mō sukoshi o-kane ga hoshii desu ka.**

If the subject is a third person (he/she/they), **hoshii** is usually followed by **to itte iru/imasu** (iimashita in the past), or a word for 'seems' (see Chapter 13):

A: What does she want? **Kanojo wa nani ga hoshii to itte imasu ka.**  
 B: She doesn't want anything. **Nanimo hoshiku nai to itte imasu.**

Alternatively, the verb **hoshigaru/hoshigarimasu** may be used:

He doesn't want any money. **O-kane wa hoshigatte imasen.**

**Hoshii** can also be used before a noun:

Is there something you want (J: a desired thing)? **Hoshii mono wa arimasu**  
 I need some more time. (J: As for me, more time is necessary.) **Watashi wa mō chotto jikan ga irimasu.**  
 Don't you need that? **Irimasen ka.**



Often the meaning of **iru/irimasu** is close to 'want':

A: *What about some tea?*  
B: *I don't want any now.*

**Kōcha wa?**  
**Ima wa irimasen.**

## Exercise 20

Put into Japanese:

- 'Don't you like that song?' 'No, I really loathe it.'
- 'What sports is your brother good at?' 'He's good at baseball.'
- She's got very pretty eyes.
- I've got two children. What about you?
- I can speak Japanese but I can't speak Korean yet.
- I don't want that, so I'll give it to you.
- She wants that expensive dress.
- 'Can you do it?' 'No, I can't. Would you (be kind enough to) ask him if he can?'

## 79 'Want to' (i)

'Want to' is made by adding **tai** to the stem of any verb. **Tai** works like an **i** adjective, and so its negative is **taku nai**. Check you can make the **tai** and **taku nai** forms of the following:

|                        |                 |   |                      |
|------------------------|-----------------|---|----------------------|
| <b>suru/shimasu</b>    | → <b>shitai</b> | → | <b>shitaku nai</b>   |
| <b>oriru/orimasu</b>   | <b>oritai</b>   |   | <b>oritaku nai</b>   |
| <b>kuru/kimasu</b>     | <b>kitai</b>    |   | <b>kitaku nai</b>    |
| <b>kau/kaimasu</b>     | <b>kaitai</b>   |   | <b>kaitaku nai</b>   |
| <b>iku/ikimasu</b>     | <b>ikitai</b>   |   | <b>ikitaku nai</b>   |
| <b>kaeru/kaerimasu</b> | <b>kaeritai</b> |   | <b>kaeritaku nai</b> |
| <b>kaeru/kaemasu</b>   | <b>kaetai</b>   |   | <b>kaetaku nai</b>   |

Now check you can form the past positive and negative of the following:

|                 |   |                     |   |                          |
|-----------------|---|---------------------|---|--------------------------|
| <b>shita</b>    | → | <b>shitakatta</b>   | → | <b>shitaku nakatta</b>   |
| <b>oritai</b>   |   | <b>oritakatta</b>   |   | <b>oritaku nakatta</b>   |
| <b>owaritai</b> |   | <b>owaritakatta</b> |   | <b>owaritaku nakatta</b> |
| <b>kaitai</b>   |   | <b>kaitakatta</b>   |   | <b>kaitaku nakatta</b>   |
| <b>kitai</b>    |   | <b>kitakatta</b>    |   | <b>kitaku nakatta</b>    |
| <b>detai</b>    |   | <b>detakatta</b>    |   | <b>detaku nakatta</b>    |
| <b>kaeritai</b> |   | <b>kaeritakatta</b> |   | <b>kaeritaku nakatta</b> |

The addition of **desu** or **n'desu** to these forms makes them polite:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>We don't want to go home yet.</i>         | <b>Mada kaeritaku nai desu.</b>        |
| <i>I didn't want to go by plane.</i>         | <b>Hikōki de ikitaku nakatta desu.</b> |
| <i>I should like to open a bank account.</i> | <b>Kōza o hirakitai n'desu ga.</b>     |

Often the direct object of the **tai** form is followed not by **o**, but by **ga**:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>Why do you want to read yesterday's newspaper?</i> | <b>Dōshite kinō no shinbun ga yomitai n'desu ka.</b> |
| <i>I wanted to buy that shirt.</i>                    | <b>Ano shatsu ga kaitakatta desu.</b>                |

An alternative to the polite **desu** ending is **to omoimasu** ('think that'). Its meaning is often close to 'would like to':

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>I would like to go to bed now.</i>         | <b>Mō netai to omoimasu yo.</b>                  |
| <i>Wouldn't you like to go out somewhere?</i> | <b>Dokoka e asobi ni ikitai to omoimasen ka.</b> |

## 80 'Want to' (ii)

A 3rd person subject generally requires either **to itte iru/imasu** or **deshō** (or a word for 'seems', see Chapter 13):

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>They want to go with us.</i>              | <b>Karera wa issho ni ikitai to itte imasu.</b> |
| <i>The children want something to drink.</i> | <b>Kodomo wa nanika nomitai deshō.</b>          |



A common alternative is to add **-garu** to the **tai** ending. Note the formation: **ikitai** → **ikitagaru**. This is generally found as **-gatte iru/imasu**:

*She wanted to do it but she couldn't.*      **Kanojo wa yaritagatte ita n'desu ga dekinakatta desu.**

## 81 'Want someone to ...'

The **te** form of the verb plus **hoshii** is used for 'want someone to do something'. The agent (the person required to perform the action) is followed by **ni**. The speaker will use it only when addressing those he deems to be of inferior status or when speaking to intimates. The form is frequently used interrogatively in polite speech to mean 'Do you want me/us to ...?':

*Tanaka, I want you to come early tomorrow.*      **Tanaka-kun ashita hayaku kite hoshii.**  
*Do you want me to phone?*      **Denwa shite hoshii n'desu ka.**

## 82 More on *narul/narimasu*

**Naru/narimasu** is used with the **tai** form of verbs:

*Yesterday I didn't want to, but today I do (J: I have become want to).*      **Kinō wa shitaku nakatta desu ga kyō wa shitaku narimashita.**  
*Do you (now) want to meet her?*      **Kanojo ni aitaku natta n'desu ka.**

**Naru/narimasu** is also used very often both with **nai** itself and the plain negative of verbs:

*A: Has the snow all gone?*      **Yuki wa minna naku narimashita ka.**  
*B: No, it hasn't (yet). He's disappeared.*      **(Mada) naku natte imasen. Kare wa inaku narimashita yo.**  
*I can't speak Japanese any more.*      **Nihongo wa dekinaku narimashita.**

**Naku narimashita** used to refer to people means 'die':

*My teacher died the day before yesterday.*      **Sensei wa ototoi naku narimashita.**

'Come to ...' is often expressed by **yō ni naru/narimasu**:

*You will (come to) understand one day.*      **Itsuka wakaru yō ni naru deshō.**  
*I couldn't do it a week ago, but now I can.*      **Isshūkan mae wa dekimasen deshita ga ima wa dekiru yō ni narimashita.**

## 83 More on *yō ni*

**Yō ni** has the literal meaning of 'so as to', 'in such a way that' (see Chapter 11). The same **yō ni** can be used with **suru/shimasu** to mean 'be sure to' ('do in such a way as to'):

*Be sure to be back by seven.*      **Shichiji made ni kaette kuru yō ni shite kudasai.**  
*Be sure to ring, won't you?*      **Denwa suru yō ni shite kudasai ne.**

**Yō ni** is used with a large number of other verbs too. Below is a selection:

*Open the window (J: so as) to let some air in.*      **Kaze ga haitte kuru yō ni mado o akete kudasai.**  
*Let's pray (J: in such a way) that they arrive safely.*      **Buji ni tōchaku suru yō ni inorimashō.**  
*I got up early so as to be in time for the plane.*      **Hikōki ni ma ni au yō ni hayaku okimashita.**  
*Let's take care (J: in such a way that we do) not to smoke too much.*      **Tabako o suisuginai yō ni chūi shimashō\*.**

(\* This is the health warning found on the side of Japanese cigarette packs.)

## Exercise 21

Put into Japanese:

- 1 I don't want to go, neither does she.
- 2 You don't need that, do you?
- 3 Does your brother want to go too?
- 4 Be sure to lock the door, won't you.
- 5 My money's all gone.
- 6 Take care not to break it.

## CONVERSATION 12A

### Likes and dislikes

Mr Amai (A) asks Mr Brown about his preferences:

- A: Buraun-san wa sukikirai wa arimasu ka.  
B: Sō desu ne. Kirai na mono wa amari nai desu ne. Nattō to manjū gurai<sup>1</sup> desu ne. Ato wa<sup>2</sup> kirai na mono wa betsu ni nai to omoimasu.  
A: Sashimi to sushi wa daijōbu desu ka.  
B: Sashimi mo sushi mo daikōbutsu desu yo. Saisho wa chotto dake teikō ga atta n'desu ga ima wa totemo suki desu.  
A: Nihonshu wa dō desu ka. Gaikokujin wa minna Nihonshu ga suki da to kikimashita ga.  
B: Dō deshō. Watashi wa reigai ka mo shiremasen ga Nihonshu wa chotto dame desu!

## CONVERSATION 12B

### 'What sports are you good at?'

They go on to discuss sports:

- A: Buraun-san wa supōtsu ga jōzu deshō?  
B: Sō desu ne. Ragubī wa wari to jōzu desu kedo ato wa<sup>2</sup> amari dekinai n'desu yo. Amai-san wa nanika supōtsu ga dekimasu ka.  
A: Yakyū to sofutobōru gurai<sup>3</sup> desu ne.  
B: Yakyū wa Nihon de sugoi ninki ga arimasu ne. Sonna ni<sup>4</sup> ninki ga aru nante<sup>5</sup> shirimasen deshita. Yakyū no heta na Nihonjin wa inai n'ja nai desu ka<sup>6</sup>.  
A: Sō ka mo shiremasen ne. Kodomo no toki kara minna yatte imasu kara ne. Buraun-san, yakyū no shiai o mi ni ikimasen ka<sup>7</sup>.  
B: Zehi ikitai desu ne.  
A: Doko no fuan<sup>8</sup> desu ka.  
B: Watashi wa Kyojin<sup>9</sup> ga suki desu ne. Amai-san wa?  
A: Yappari Hanshin Taigāsu<sup>9</sup> desu ne!

## Notes:

1. **Nattō to manjū gurai**: 'Natto and manju are about the extent of my likes and dislikes'; **gurai** here means 'and not much else'. **Nattō** is fermented soy, mostly eaten at breakfast, and **manjū** are bean cakes.
2. **ato wa**: 'apart from that', 'as for the rest'.
3. **gurai**: see note 1 above.
4. **sonna ni**: 'that' as in 'I didn't know it was *that* popular'. See Chapter 16.
5. **nante**: informal alternative for **to iu koto wa**.
6. **n'ja nai desu ka**: 'Isn't it the case that ...?'; this is a very common sentence ending.
7. **ikimasen ka**: distinguish between **ikimasen ka**, a suggestion meaning 'would you like to', and **ikitai desu ka** ('do you want to?').
8. **Doko no fuan**: 'Who do you support?'; **doko** refers to 'which team?'
9. **Kyojin, Hanshin Taigāsu** ('Tigers') are both top professional baseball teams.

## Chapter 13

### MAIN POINTS:

Appearance; feel; taste; sound.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) The weather; (b) The news.

## 84 'Appears to be', 'looks like' (i)

There are two types of expression involving **sō desu**:

- (1) After the plain form of adjectives or verbs it means 'it appears from what I've heard that ...' or simply 'I hear that ...', 'it is said that ...':

*I hear that she's given up Japanese.*      **Nihongo o yameta sō desu.**

*I hear it's quiet there.*      **Asoko wa shizuka da sō desu.**

- (2) **Sō desu** is also added to the stem of both types of adjective:

**shizuka na** → **shizuka** → **shizukasō**  
**oishii** → **oishi** → **oishisō**

N.B.: **ii** ('good') has an irregular form **yosasō**; **nai** ('there isn't') has an irregular form **nasasō**.

**Sō desu** is also added to the stem of verbs of any group:  
**dekimasu** → **deki** → **deki sō**



Here the meaning is 'it looks, from what I see, (or sounds from what I hear) that (it's going to be) ...'.

Compare:

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| <i>It looks (as if it's going to be) tasty.</i> | <b>Oishisō desu.</b>              |
| <i>I hear it's tasty.</i>                       | <b>Oishii sō desu.</b>            |
| <i>It looks quiet.</i>                          | <b>Shizukasō desu.</b>            |
| <i>They say it's quiet.</i>                     | <b>Shizuka da sō desu.</b>        |
| <i>She looks as if she wants to eat manju.</i>  | <b>Manjū ga tabetasō desu.</b>    |
| <i>I hear she wants to eat manju.</i>           | <b>Manjū ga tabetai sō desu.</b>  |
| <i>She looks as if she speaks Japanese.</i>     | <b>Nihongo ga dekisō desu.</b>    |
| <i>I hear she speaks Japanese.</i>              | <b>Nihongo ga dekiru sō desu.</b> |

**Sō**, added to the stem of an adjective or verb, functions as a **na** adjective:

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>That's tasty-looking food.</i>    | <b>Sore wa oishisō na gohan desu ne.</b> |
| <i>This is a quiet-looking town.</i> | <b>Kore wa shizukasō na machi desu.</b>  |

## 85 'Appears to be', 'looks like' (ii)

Whereas **sō desu** (2) is used for evidence based largely on sight and refers to something that has not yet been realized, **yō desu** is used generally for a situation that exists at the time of speaking. Moreover, **yō desu**'s usage is broader and not confined to sight. Consider the following:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>He seems to have a temperature.</i>   | <b>Netsu ga aru yō desu.</b>                 |
| <i>He didn't appear to understand.</i>   | <b>Wakaranakatta yō desu.</b>                |
| <i>All the shops are shut, it seems.</i> | <b>O-mise wa minna shimatte iru yō desu.</b> |
| <i>It appears to be quite useless.</i>   | <b>Zenzen dame na yō desu.</b>               |

With nouns the particle **no** is needed:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>That person looks like a businessman.</i> | <b>Ano hito wa sararīman no yō desu ne.</b> |
|--|---|

**Yō** is also used as a **na** adjective with a variety of meanings:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| <i>There are few beautiful places like Kamikochi.</i>                       | <b>Kamikōchi no yō na utsukushii tokoro wa sukunai desu.</b>              |
| <i>There are many short people such as myself in Japan.</i>                 | <b>Nihon ni wa watashi no yō na se ga hikui hito wa takusan imasu yo.</b> |
| <i>It's a spring-like day.</i>  | <b>Haru no yō na hi desu.</b>   |
| <b>Yō</b> may also be followed by <b>ni</b> in a variety of different ways: |   |
| <i>She speaks Japanese like a Japanese.</i>                                 | <b>Nihonjin no yō ni Nihongo o hanashimasu.</b>                           |
| <i>Do it quickly, as the teacher said.</i>                                  | <b>Sensei ga itta yō ni hayaku shite kudasai.</b>                         |

'Just like' is **to onaji yō ni**:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>The Japanese, just like the English, always talk about the weather.</i> | <b>Nihonjin wa Igrisujin to onaji yō ni itsumo tenki ni tsuite hanasu n'desu.</b> |
| <i>Pronounce it just like the teacher does.</i>                            | <b>Sensei to onaji yō ni hatsuon shite kudasai.</b>                               |

'Unlike' is **to chigatte**:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Unlike Chinese, Japanese is easy.</i> | <b>Chūgokugo to chigatte Nihongo wa kantan desu yo.</b> |
|--|---|

Finally, learn this set of useful words:

|                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| what sort of (in what way)? | <b>dono yō na (ni)</b> |
| this sort of (in this way)  | <b>kono yō na (ni)</b> |
| that sort of (in that way)  | <b>sono yō na (ni)</b> |
| that sort of (in that way)  | <b>ano yō na (ni)</b>  |

Consider the following:

|                                     |                                   |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>In what way is it different?</i> | <b>Dono yō ni chigaimasu ka.</b>  |
| <i>What sort of problem is it?</i>  | <b>Dono yō na mondai desu ka.</b> |

## 86 'Appears to be', 'looks like' (iii)

Mitai and rashii are two common words which at the end of a sentence mean 'appears', 'looks like' in all but the sense of *sō desu* (2). In conversation, *mitai* is the most common of all the 'appearance' words:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>The water seems to have boiled.</i>   | <b>O-yu ga waita mitai desu yo.</b>      |
| <i>I hear he's coming home tomorrow.</i> | <b>Ashita kaette kuru mitai desu ne.</b> |
| <i>It seems to be very old.</i>          | <b>Totemo furui mitai desu ne.</b>       |
| <i>It appears to be useless.</i>         | <b>Dame mitai desu.</b>                  |
| <i>He's a businessman, it seems.</i>     | <b>Ano hito wa sararīman mitai desu.</b> |

In all the above *rashii* could be used as well.

Differences between *mitai* and *rashii*: *mitai* is a *na* adjective; *rashii* is an *i* adjective. When used before nouns or as adverbs their meanings differ. Consider first *mitai*:

|                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| <i>I loathe days like today.</i> | <b>Kyō mitai na hi wa daikirai desu.</b>        |
| <i>Do it like I did.</i>         | <b>Watashi ga yatta mitai ni yatte kudasai.</b> |

**B rashii A**, however, means 'an A typical of B':

|                                   |                                 |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>He's a manly person.</i>       | <b>Otoko rashii otoko desu.</b> |
| <i>It's a typical spring day.</i> | <b>Haru rashii hi desu.</b>     |

## Exercise 22

Put into Japanese:

- I understand that he married a Japanese girl last year.
- That sashimi really does look tasty, you know.
- The concert seems to have finished now, so shall we go for a drink?
- 'How do I use chopsticks?' 'Use them like I do.'
- I loathe people like her. I hear she argues with everyone.

## 87 Feel, sense, taste, smell, sound, looks, shape

Learn the following idiomatic expressions:

|   |                                  |
|---|----------------------------------|
| Feel (like) ...                                 | <b>ki ga suru/shimasu</b>        |
| Taste (like) ...                                | <b>aji ga suru/shimasu</b>       |
| Smell (like) ...                                | <b>nioi ga suru/shimasu</b>      |
| Sound (like) ...                                | <b>oto ga suru/shimasu</b>       |
| Feel (as if) ..., get the impression (that) ... | <b>kanji ga suru/shimasu</b>     |
| Look ...  | <b>kao o shite iru/imasu</b>     |
| Have a ... shape                                | <b>katachi o shite iru/imasu</b> |

Many of these expressions are preceded by (no) *yō na* or *to iu*. Study the following:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>I don't feel like getting up today.</i>       | <b>Kyō wa okiru ki ga shinai n'desu.</b>            |
| <i>This fish has got a rather odd taste.</i>     | <b>Kono sakana wa chotto hen na aji ga shimasu.</b> |
| <i>It smells like gas.</i>                       | <b>Gasu no yō na nioi ga shimasu yo.</b>            |
| <i>It sounds as if it's raining, doesn't it?</i> | <b>Ame ga futte iru yō na oto ga shimasu ne.</b>    |



*I feel that it's expensive.*

**Chotto takai kanji ga shimasu.**

*I get the impression it's a bit difficult.*

**Chotto muzukashii to iu kanji ga shimasu yo.**

*He looks sad.*

**Kanashii kao o shite imasu.**

*She's good-looking.*

**Kanojo wa ii kao o shite imasu.**

*That temple is a funny shape, isn't it?*

**Ano o-tera wa hen na katachi o shite imasu ne.**

Note finally the very common intransitive verbs **mieru/miemasu** (lit. be visible) and **kikoeru/kikoemasu** (lit. be audible):

*Excuse me, I can't see.*

**Sumimasen. (Chotto) miemasen.**

*Can you see the sea?*

**Umi ga miemasu ka.**

*It looks very pretty.*

**Totemo kirei ni miemasu.**

*I can't hear. Would you turn the sound up, please?*

**Chotto kikoemasen. Oto o mō chotto ōkiku shite moraemasu ka.**

## Exercise 23

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 One gets the feeling that it's spring already.
- 2 Don't you feel like going out tonight?
- 3 He looks as if he hasn't eaten for a long time.
- 4 That house is shaped like a temple.
- 5 Can't you smell something (J: isn't there a smell)?

## CONVERSATION 13A

### The weather

*Mr Amai and Mr Brown discuss today's weather:*

A: **Kyō no tenki wa dō naru n'deshō ka.**

B: **Tenki yohō ni yoru to<sup>1</sup> hare da sō desu ga dōmo haresō na kanji ga shimasen ne.**

A: **Sō desu ne. Ame ga furisō desu kara pikunikku wa chūshi ni naru n'deshō. Mō ame ga furihajimeta mitai desu yo.**

B: **Un, potsupotsu futte iru yō desu ne. Komarimashita. Demo nishi no hō wa akarui desu kara ato kara hareru yō na ki mo shimasu<sup>2</sup> yo.**

## CONVERSATION 13B

### The news

*Mr Amai talks about an earthquake in Tokyo:*

A: **Kesa no nyūsu o mimashita ka.**

B: **Mada mite imasen. Dōshite desu ka.**

A: **Nyūsu ni yoru to<sup>3</sup> Tōkyō ni kanari ōkii jishin ga atta sō desu. Shindo 5<sup>4</sup> datta rashii desu yo. Ōkii deshō?**

B: **Shindo 5 wa ōkii desu ne. Fushōsha wa?**

A: **Fushōsha wa nannin deta ka oboete imasen ga nanninka<sup>5</sup> shinda mitai desu yo. Jishin wa kowai desu ne.**

B: **Kowai desu yo. Demo 1923nen no yō na ōkii jishin ja nakute yokatta desu<sup>6</sup> ne.**

A: **Sore wa sō desu ga nyūsu de mō sugu mō hitotsu jishin ga aru ka mo shirenai kara chūi suru yō ni itte imashita yōo.**

[www.irlanguage.com](http://www.irlanguage.com)



## Notes:

1. **ni yoru to ... sō desu**: 'according to ...'; **yoru to ...** followed by **sō da/desu** is a very common way of expressing 'according to ...'.
2. **yō na ki mo shimasu**: 'I actually feel that ...'
3. See note 1.
4. **Shindo 5**: 'magnitude 5'.
5. **nanninka**: 'quite a few people'; for other related expressions see Chapter 14.
6. **ja nakute yokatta desu**: 'it's lucky that it wasn't'.

## Chapter 14

### MAIN POINTS:

Relative clauses, simple and complex;  
anybody/somebody/nobody.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) A radio interview; (b) A temple in Kyoto.

## 88 Relative clauses (i)

A relative clause in English is one which begins with 'who' (e.g. 'the child who ...') or 'which' (e.g. 'the car which ...'). As you know, in Japanese there are no words for 'who', 'which', etc. in this sense. For example, 'a car which is fast' is simply **hayai kuruma**. (Refer back to sections 37 and 40.) Just as adjectives can come before nouns, so too can verbs in the formation of 'relative clauses'. Study these examples:

*The child who is crying (J: the 'is crying' child) is my son.*

**Naite iru kodomo wa musuko desu.**

*The man who is singing in the bar (J: the 'in the bar is singing' man) is the President.*

**Bā de utatte iru hito wa shachō desu.**

*The car which crashed is a Toyota.*

**Shōtotsu shita kuruma wa Toyota desu.**

## 89 Relative clauses (ii)

Consider how the Japanese say more complex relative clauses, noting in the examples below that **no** may replace **ga**:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>the man whose eyes are blue</i><br>(J: the 'eyes are blue' man)                | <b>me ga (no) aoi hito wa</b>                  |
| <i>a student with no money</i> (J: a<br>'there is no money' student)              | <b>o-kane ga (no) nai gakusei</b><br><b>ga</b> |
| <i>a country with lots of mountains</i><br>(J: a 'mountains are many'<br>country) | <b>yama ga (no) ōi kuni ga</b>                 |

Now consider how to say 'whom', 'to whom', 'in which', 'whose', 'on which', etc.:

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>The man whom I saw</i> (J: the 'I<br>saw' man) <i>is a famous singer.</i>  | <b>Watashi no mita hito wa</b><br><b>yūmei na kashu desu.</b>                                      |
| <i>The girl to whom I sent a card</i><br>(J: the 'I sent a card' girl) <i>will</i><br><i>be twenty-one tomorrow.</i>                            | <b>Watashi ga kādo o okutta</b><br><b>onna no ko wa ashita</b><br><b>nijū ichi desu.</b>           |
| <i>The bar in which we had</i><br><i>arranged to meet</i> (J: the 'we<br>had arranged to meet' bar) <i>is</i><br><i>a haunt for foreigners.</i> | <b>Watashitachi ga</b><br><b>machiawase shita bā wa</b><br><b>gaijin no tamariba desu.</b>         |
| <i>The man whose father had that</i><br><i>accident</i> (J: the 'father had an<br>accident' man) <i>lives near me.</i>                          | <b>Otōsan ga jiko ni atta hito</b><br><b>wa watashi no ie no</b><br><b>chikaku ni sunde imasu.</b> |
| <i>The road on which we came</i><br>(J: the 'we came' road)<br><i>is different.</i>   | <b>Kita michi wa chigaimasu.</b>   |

Note that the subject of the relative clause may be expressed either by **ga** or by **no**.

The following are also a type of relative clause: 'things to do', **suru koto**; 'places to see', **miru tokoro**; 'something to write with' or 'something to write on', **kaku mono**; 'something to eat', **taberu mono**.

N.B.: An abstract thing is **koto**, a concrete thing is **mono**.

## Exercise 24

*Put into Japanese:*

- I like that car with the red roof.
- Who's that girl drinking coffee?
- Japan is a country with a very large population.
- Who was that man you were speaking to just now?  
Is he someone you've known for a long time?
- This is the book Mr Tanaka bought for his wife.
- This is the shop in which I bought it.

## 90 'Someone', 'something'

'Someone', 'something', etc. are made by adding **ka** to the question words 'who', 'what', etc.

| <i>Positive statement</i> | <i>Negative or positive question</i> |                  |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|
| someone, somebody         | someone, somebody                    | <b>dareka</b>    |
|                           | anyone, anybody                      | <b>donataka</b>  |
| something                 | something, anything                  | <b>nanika</b>    |
| sometime                  | sometime                             | <b>itsuka</b>    |
| somewhere                 | somewhere, anywhere                  | <b>dokoka</b>    |
| one or the other          | one or the other                     | <b>dochiraka</b> |
| one (some) of them        | one (some) of them                   | <b>doreka</b>    |
| some, a fair number of    | some, a fair number of,<br>any       | <b>ikutsuka</b>  |
| some, a fair amount of    | some, a fair amount of,<br>any       | <b>ikuraka</b>   |

With these words **ga** and **o** are often omitted. **Wa** is never used. Other particles such as **ni**, **e**, **kara**, **to**, etc. must, however, be used when the verb demands it:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Someone stole my purse.                             | Dareka (ga) watashi no saifu o nusumimashita. |
| Did you tell someone (anyone)?                      | Dareka ni iimashita ka.                       |
| Will you have something to drink?                   | Nanika (o) nomimasu ka.                       |
| Shall we go and see a No (play) sometime?           | Itsuka Nō o mi ni ikimashō ka.                |
| I saw that advertisement somewhere.                 | Dokoka de sono kōkoku o mimashita.            |
| They live somewhere in Nagoya.                      | Nagoya no dokoka ni sunde imasu.              |
| Have you chosen one of (the two of) them?           | Dochiraka (o) erabimashita ka.                |
| Have you chosen (any) one of these?                 | Doreka (o) erabimashita ka.                   |
| There are a fair number of possibilities, you know. | Ikutsuka no kanōsei ga arimasu yo.            |

Often these words are used just 'sitting' before an adjective plus noun or a relative clause, contributing no extra meaning. Study the examples below:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Shall we go and have something good to eat?             | Nanika oishii mono o tabe ni ikimashō ka.     |
| I'd like to go somewhere where there aren't any people. | Dokoka hito ga inai tokoro ni ikitai desu ne. |

'Some people ... other people ...', 'some places ... other places ...' etc. require a different construction with **aru** ('certain') and **wa**:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| Some people like manju, others don't.   | Aru hito wa manjū ga suki desu ga aru hito wa kirai desu.   |
| Some places I went to, others I didn't. | Aru tokoro wa ikimashita ga aru tokoro wa ikimasen deshita. |

**Ka** is added to the appropriate question word to mean 'a fair number of', 'quite a few':

|   |                                   |
|---|-----------------------------------|
| It took quite a few hours.                                | Nanjikanka kakarimashita yo.      |
| A fair number of people were there.                       | Nanninka kite imashita.           |
| He's been living in Japan for a fair number of years now. | Nihon ni mō nannenka sunde imasu. |

## 91 'Nobody', 'nothing'

'Nobody', 'nothing', etc. in negative statements, and 'anybody', 'anything', etc. in negative questions are translated by the appropriate question word and **mo**:

| Negative statement | Negative question     |                  |
|--------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| no one, nobody     | anyone, anybody       | daremo, donatamo |
| nothing            | anything              | nanimono         |
| nowhere            | anywhere              | dokomo           |
| neither            | either of two         | dochiramono      |
| none               | any of three and more | doremō           |
| not much at all    | not much at all       | ikuramō          |
| not many at all    | not many at all       | ikutsumō         |

The particles **ga** and **o** need not be used with these words. **Wa** is never used. All other particles are used. Note that the particle is inserted between the question word and **mo** (e.g. **dare ni mo**; **doko e mo**, etc.):

|                                |                                       |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| I haven't told anyone yet.     | Mada dare ni mo itte imasen.          |
| There's nothing in the fridge. | Reizōko ni nanimo haitte inai n'desu. |
| The teacher isn't anywhere.    | Sensei wa doko ni mo irasshaimasen.   |
| I don't like either of them.   | Dochiramono suki ja nai desu.         |
| Don't you like any of them?    | Doremō suki ja nai desu ka.           |

N.B.: 'Never' in the present and future tenses is translated by **kesshite** ('definitely') or **zettai ni** ('absolutely') – for 'have never' see Chapter 15:



*I'll never marry her.*

**Kanojo to zettai ni kekkon  
shimasen.**

*They're never going to win,  
are they?*

**Zettai ni katanai desu ne.**

Study these next examples, in which the question word followed by **mo** is an adjective:

*They don't sell them in any shop.* **Dono mise de mo utte  
imasen.**

*My son doesn't go to any  
school yet.*

**Musuko wa mada doko no  
gakkō ni mo itte imasen.**

Often certain of these words are used just sitting before an adjective and noun or a relative clause, with no extra meaning. Study the following:

*There was no one I know there.*

**Asoko ni daremo shitte iru  
hito wa imasen deshita.**

*There's no interesting  
programme on, is there?*

**Nanimo omoshiroi  
bangumi wa yatte imasen  
ne.**

*There's nowhere I want to go.*

**Dokomo ikitai tokoro wa  
arimasen.**

Several of these words appear in positive sentences as well:

*I can do both.*

**Dochiramo dekimasu.**

*They're all tasty.*

**Doremo oishii desu.**

**Mo** is added to the appropriate question word to mean 'a great number of ...', 'any number of ...':

*A great number of people were  
there.*

**Nanninmo kite imashita.**

*They've been married for a  
great number of years  
(years and years).*

**Mō nannenmo kekkon shite  
imasu.**

*We drank bottles and bottles  
of beer.*

**Bīru wa nanbonmo  
nomimashita.**

*I asked time and time again.*

**Nankaimo kikimashita.**

## 92 'Anybody', 'anything'

'Anybody, 'anything' in positive sentences (e.g. 'Anybody can speak Japanese!') is translated by the appropriate question word followed by **demo**. The particles **wa**, **ga** and **o** are not used. All other particles are. Study the selection of examples below:

*Anybody can speak Japanese.*

**Daredemo Nihongo ga  
dekimasu.**

*I'll eat anything tasty.*

**Nandemo oishii mono o  
tabemasu.**

*Please take whichever of the two  
you like.*

**Dochirademo suki na no o  
totte kudasai.**

*Please use any of them.*

**Doredemo tsukatte kudasai.**

*Come round any time.*

**Itsudemo asobi ni kite  
kudasai.**

*There's any amount of beer.*

**Bīru wa ikurademo arimasu  
yo.**

*They sell them in any country.*

**Dono kuni de demo utte  
imasu.**

### Exercise 25

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 Is there anywhere quiet near here?
- 2 What sports can he do?
- 3 He bought loads and loads of (J: any number of) books.
- 4 There was nobody there who could speak English.
- 5 There isn't anything interesting on the TV tonight.

## CONVERSATION 14A

### A radio interview

*The interviewer (A) asks Mr Brown about his motives for visiting Japan:*

- A: Mina-san, o-hayō gozaimasu. Kyō no o-kyaku-san wa Igrisu kara oide ni natta<sup>1</sup> Jon Buraun-san desu. Buraun-san, Nihon ni kita dōki<sup>2</sup> wa nan desu ka. Yahari Nihongo no benkyō desu ka.
- B: Sō desu ne. Watashi ga Nihon ni kitai to omotta dōki wa ikutsuka arimasu ga yappari hanasu chikara to kiku chikara<sup>3</sup> o tsuketakatta kara desu ne.
- A: Naruhodo. Sore kara Buraun-san, Nihon de ichiban shitai koto wa – Nihongo o benkyō suru hoka ni<sup>4</sup> – nan desu ka.
- B: Shitai koto wa takusan arimasu ga yappari Nihon no shakai ni tokekonde tomodachi o takusan tsukuritai desu ne.
- A: Sore kara saigo ni Buraun-san, ichiban ikitai tokoro wa doko desu ka.
- B: Sō desu ne. Gaikokujin ga amari ikanai tokoro ni ikitai desu ne. Tatoeba Gotō retto mitai na rekishi no omoshiroi tokoro<sup>5</sup> o tazunetai desu ne.
- A: Sō desu ka. Arigatō gozaimashita.

## CONVERSATION 14B

### A temple in Kyoto

*Mr Brown goes to visit a Zen temple in Kyoto with Mr Inoue (I):*

- B: Kyōto no doko ni ikimashō ka.
- I: Sō desu ne. Teien no aru o-tera ga ii desu ka soretomo tatemono no omoshiroi tokoro<sup>6</sup> ga ii desu ka. Kyōto ni wa nandemo arimasu yo.
- B: Zen no eikyō o uketa teien o mite mitai<sup>7</sup> desu ne.
- I: Soshitara, mazu Ryōanji to iu o-tera ni ikimashō. Ryōanji wa totemo omoshiroi desu yo. Hito wa itsumo chotto ōi desu ga zettai ni miru kachi<sup>8</sup> wa aru to omoimasu yo. Ryōanji wa Zen no shisō o arawasu tenkeiteki na teien<sup>9</sup> de Nihon dokutoku no tokoro desu. Hakusa to ishi dake shika nai teien<sup>10</sup> desu yo.
- B: Omoshirosō desu ne. Seiyō de iu teien<sup>11</sup> to zenzen chigau mitai desu ne.

## Notes:

1. **oide ni natta Buraun-san**: 'Mr Brown, who has come from England'; **oide ni naru/narimasu** is an honorific form of **kuru/kimasu**.
2. **Nihon ni kita dōki**: 'your motives for coming to Japan'.
3. **hanasu chikara to kiku chikara**: 'my ability to speak and hear'.
4. **benkyō suru hoka ni**: 'in addition to (apart from) studying'.
5. **omoshiroi tokoro**: 'a place like the Goto Islands with an interesting history'.
6. **tatemono no omoshiroi tokoro**: 'a place whose buildings are interesting'.
7. **mite mitai**: 'have a look and see'.
8. **miru kachi wa aru**: 'worth seeing'.
9. ... **arawasu tenkeiteki na teien de**: 'a typical garden which shows ...'.
10. ... **dake shika nai teien**: gardens with only white raked sand and stones, such as Ryoanji, are typical of Zen-influenced gardens.
11. **Seiyō de iu teien**: 'what one calls a garden in the West'.

## Chapter 15

### MAIN POINTS:

Must/must not, may/may not, can/cannot; some uses of koto and no with verbs.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Culture shock? (b) 'Have you ever been to Kamikochi?'

## 93 'Must', 'have to', 'must not', 'may not'

You need to know two ways to express 'must', 'have to'. The first involves the negative plain form of the verb plus **to** ('if') plus **dame desu** ('it's no good'):

*You must read it (J: if you don't read it, it's no good).*      **Sore o yomanai to dame desu.**

*You must have your registration card with you.*      **Gaijin tōrokushō o motte inai to dame desu.**

The second is known as the **nakereba narimasen** form. First make the negative plain form: **suru/shimasu** → **shinai**, then substitute **nakereba** for **nai** and add **narimasen**: **shinai** → **shinakereba** → **shinakereba narimasen** (**nakereba** means 'if (you do) not ...'; **narimasen** means 'it's no good'):

*You must eat it all (J: if you don't eat it all, it's no good).*      **Zenbu tabenakereba narimasen.**

*I have to catch the 9.30 train.*      **Kuji sanjuppun no densha ni noranakereba narimasen.**



'Had to' is formed by the past of **narimasen**:

*We had to tell him.*      **Kare ni iwanakereba  
narimasen deshita.**

'Must not', 'may not' is expressed by the **te wa ikemasen** form. Add **wa** to the **te** form of the verb: **suu/suimasu** ('smoke') → **sutte wa**, and then add **ikemasen**: **sutte wa ikemasen** (**te wa** means 'if (you) ...'; **ikemasen** means 'it will not do'). A very common abbreviated form involves substituting **tcha** for **te wa**:

*You mustn't smoke in here (J:  
if you smoke here, it won't do).*      **Koko de sutte wa ikemasen.**  
*We mustn't laugh, must we?*      **Waratcha ikemasen ne.**

## 94 'May', 'don't have to', 'don't need to'

'May' (and 'can', in the sense of 'it's all right to') requires the **te** form plus **mo** ('even if') plus **ii desu** ('it's good, it's all right'):

*You may stay (the night).  
May I sit here?*      **Tomatte mo ii desu yo.**  
*A: Do you mind if I smoke?*      **Koko ni suwatte mo ii desu  
ka.**  
*B: No, I don't.*      **Tabako o sutte mo ii desu  
ka.**  
**Hai, ii desu yo.**

**Kamaimasen** ('(I) don't mind') may be used instead of **ii desu**:

*A: Do you mind if I open the  
window?*      **Mado o akete mo  
kamaimasen ka.**  
*B: No, I don't mind.*      **Hai, kamaimasen.**

'Don't have to' and 'don't need to' are expressed by the negative **te** form plus **mo** plus **ii desu** (or **kamaimasen**):

*A: We don't have to pay now,  
do we?*      **Ima sugu harawanakute mo  
ii desu ne.**  
*B: No, you don't.*      **Hai, ii desu.**

*You don't have to eat the manju.*      **Manjū wa tabenakute mo ii  
desu.**

Note the use of the **te** form of **desu** in the following (**mo** is often dropped):

*Is this O.K.? (Will this do?)*      **Kore de (mo) ii desu ka.**  
*One will do.*      **Hitotsu de (mo) ii desu.**

The construction is found with adjectives too:

*I don't mind if it's expensive.*      **Takakute mo ii desu yo.**  
*It's O.K. if it's not cheap.*      **Yasuku nakute mo  
kamaimasen.**

## 95 'Wherever', 'whoever', etc.

Question words used with the **te mo** form translate the idea of 'wherever', 'whoever':

wherever you go      **doko e itte mo**  
wherever you eat      **doko de tabete mo**  
whatever I say to her      **kanojo ni nani o itte mo**  
whoever we ask      **dare ni kiite mo**  
whenever (at whatever time)  
you leave      **itsu shuppatsu shite mo**  
whatever school they go to      **doko no gakkō e itte mo**

All these forms may be followed by **ii desu** or **kamaimasen** to give 'I don't mind', 'it doesn't matter':

*I don't mind where you go.*      **Doko e itte mo  
kamaimasen.**  
*It doesn't matter what you say.*      **Nani o itte mo ii desu.**

## 96 'Can', 'be able'

There are two ways of expressing 'can', 'be able'. The first involves the so-called potential form of the verb, when the verb ending is changed as follows:

Group 1 verbs:

**taberu** → **tabe** → **taberareru**

There is an abbreviated form of this also in common use:  
**taberu** → **tabe** → **tabereru**

Group 2 verbs:

**oyogu** → **oyogeru**

**arau** → **araeru**

Irregular verbs:

**suru** → **dekiru**

**kuru** → **korareru** (or **koreru**)

All these 'can' forms function as Group 1 verbs in their own right. Check that you can make 'can' forms of the following:

**deru/demasu**

→

**derareru/deraremasu**  
(**dereru/deremasu**)

**iku/ikimasu**

**ikeru/ikemasu**

**harau/haraimasu**

**haraeru/haraemasu**

**toru/torimasu**

**toreru/toremasu**

**o, ga** or **wa** may follow the object of the potential:

*Can you speak English?*

**Eigo ga hanasemasu**  
(**dekimasu**) **ka.**

*I can't eat all this.*

**Kore wa zenbu**  
**taberaremasen**  
(**taberemasen**) **yo.**

The second way is to use the plain form of the verb plus **koto ga** (or **wa** or **mo**) **dekiru/dekimasu**:

*He can write Japanese.*

**Kare wa Nihongo o kaku**  
**koto ga dekimasu.**

*You can't buy anything with 500 yen.*

**Gohyakuen de wa nanimo**  
**kau koto wa dekimasen.**

*I can walk but I can't run.*

**Aruku koto wa dekimasu ga**  
**hashiru koto wa**  
**dekimasen.**

*Can you both read and write Japanese?*

**Nihongo o kaku koto mo**  
**yomu koto mo dekimasu**  
**ka.**

Note here that expressions such as 'it is too (hot) ... for me to (eat) ...' may be translated by the **te** form of an adjective plus one of the 'can' forms:

*It was too hot for me to eat (J: it was hot and so I could not ...).*

**Atsukute taberenakatta**  
**desu.**

*He spoke too quickly for me to be able to keep up.*

**Hanashi ga hayasugite**  
**oitsukemasen deshita.**

### Exercise 26

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 'Is it all right if I go with you?' 'No, I have to go on my own.'
- 2 Can you be back home by six o'clock?
- 3 You don't have to write it in Japanese. You can write it in romaji.
- 4 You mustn't talk like that.
- 5 '10,000 yen will do, won't it?' 'Yes, that will be fine.'
- 6 I had to phone the police.



## 97 Some uses of koto (i)

'Do/does ... ever ... ?' is expressed with the plain form plus ... **koto wa** (or **ga**) **arimasu ka**, often with an adverb like **tokidoki** ('sometimes'):

A: Do you ever browse in bookshops?

B: Yes, I do sometimes.

A: Do you sometimes eat out?

B: No, hardly ever.

Honya-san de tachiyomi suru koto wa arimasu ka. Hai, tokidoki arimasu.

Tokidoki gaishoku suru koto wa arimasu ka. Īe, hotondo nai desu ne.

'Has/have ... ever ... ?' requires the **ta** form plus ... **koto wa** (or **ga**) **aru/arimasu**:

A: Have you ever been to Nagasaki?

B: No, I haven't.

A: I've never been skiing, have you?

B: I have (actually).

Sometimes I go out for a drink but not often for a meal.

Nagasaki e itta koto wa arimasu ka. Nai desu.

Watashi wa suki e itta koto wa arimasen ga anata wa. Watashi wa arimasu yo.

Tokidoki nomi ni iku koto wa arimasu ga shokujji ni iku koto wa amari nai desu.

**Mo** may also be used:

I have also been to Taiwan.

I haven't even been to Kyushu.

Taiwan e itta koto mo arimasu yo.

Kyūshū e itta koto mo arimasen.

## 98 Some uses of koto (ii)

'Decide to ...' is translated by ... **koto ni suru/shimasu**, and 'be decided (come about) that ...' by **koto ni naru/narimasu**:

We decided to call an ambulance. **Kyūkyūsha o yobu koto ni shimashita.**

I've decided not to give up Japanese.

**Nihongo o yamenai koto ni shimashita.**

It's been decided that I'm going back to America next week.

**Raishū Amerika e kaeru koto ni natte imasu.**

## 99 Some uses of koto and no

By adding **koto** or **no** to the plain form of a verb you are in effect turning that verb into a noun: **hon o yomu** – read books; **hon o yomu koto (no)** – (the) reading (of) books. In many cases **no** and **koto** are interchangeable, but **no** is probably more frequent in conversation. Study the following:

I like reading books.

**Hon o yomu no ga suki desu.**

Speaking Japanese is easy but writing it is difficult.

**Nihongo o hanasu no wa kantan desu ga kaku no wa muzukashii desu.**

I'm tired of studying.

**Benkyō suru koto ni akita n'desu.**

In the following expressions **no** is more common. Consider them carefully:

I saw him talking to her.

**Kanojo to hanashite iru no o mimashita.**

Let's not go (J: Let's stop going).

**Iku no o yamemashō.**

I'm waiting for him to come back.

**Kaette kuru no o matte imasu.**

Don't forget to phone!

**Denwa suru no o wasurenaide kudasai.**

Would you help me make it?

**Tsukuru no o tetsudatte kuremasu ka.**



## 100 Some uses of *no* (i)

**No** is frequently used in emphatic questions such as 'When is it that you're off?', 'Why is it that you're studying Japanese?'. Study the examples below:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| When is it that you're off?<br>(J: As for your going,<br>when is it?) | Iku no wa itsu desu ka.                           |
| Why is it that you're studying<br>Japanese?                           | Nihongo o benkyō shite iru<br>no wa naze desu ka. |
| Where is it that you met?   | Shiriatta no wa doko desu<br>ka.                  |
| Who is it that she married?   | Kanojo ga kekkon shita no<br>wa dare desu ka.     |

## 101 Some uses of *no* (ii)

**No ni** after a plain form is used to mean either 'for the purpose of (in order to)' or 'although'. In the first sense, either **no ni wa** or **ni wa** may be used instead:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| What do you use to make<br>sukiyaki?                     | Sukiyaki o tsukuru no ni<br>nani o tsukaimasu ka.                     |
| It takes about sixteen hours to<br>fly to Japan, I hear. | Nihon e iku no ni wa<br>jūrokujikan gurai kakaru<br>sō desu.          |
| How long did it take to get<br>used to Japanese food?    | Nihon no tabemono ni<br>nareru no ni dore gurai<br>kakatta n'desu ka. |
| I came to Nara (in order) to see<br>a friend.            | Tomodachi ni au tame ni<br>Nara e kimashita.                          |

You already know **ga**, **shikashi** and **keredomo** in the sense of 'but', 'although'. **No ni** differs in three respects: (1) it is never used to begin a sentence; (2) even in polite speech it is preceded by a plain form; (3) it is generally more emphatic than the other words. Note also that **no ni** cannot be preceded by **da**. **Na** must be used instead:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Although she slept for hours<br>she's still tired. | Nanjikanmo neta no ni<br>mada tsukarete imasu. |
| Although I said he mustn't go,<br>he went.         | Itte wa ikenai to itta no ni<br>itta n'desu.   |
| He said he'd go although he's ill.                 | Byōki na no ni iku to itte<br>imashita.        |

The context will make clear which of the meanings of **no ni** is intended.

## Exercise 27

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Do you like going to see temples?' 'Yes, I do. What about you?'
- 2 'Have you ever eaten manju?' 'No, I haven't. Why?'
- 3 We've decided to go by car and not by train.
- 4 'Do you ever speak Japanese at home?' 'Yes, sometimes we do.'
- 5 Why is it that he's always late?

## CONVERSATION 15A

### Culture shock?

*Mr Inoue (I) asks Mr Brown if he's experienced a culture shock:*

- I: Nihon de karuchā shokku o keiken shimashita ka.  
B: Sō desu ne, karuchā shokku to iu hodo ja nai<sup>1</sup> desu ga yappari iroiro nareru no ni jikan ga kakarimashita ne.  
I: Kotoba toka tabemono toka desu ka.  
B: Sō desu ne. Sore kara doko o mite mo kōkoku to ka hyōshiki toka wa mina kanji desu kara saisho wa mekura no yō na ki ga shimashita.  
I: Sō deshō. Sore kara nichijō seikatsu de shite mo ii koto to shite wa ikenai koto mo sukoshi wa atta deshō.  
B: Sukoshi dake desu. Tatoeba ie no naka de kutsu o haite<sup>2</sup> wa ikenai deshō. Sore kara suwarikata mo chigaimasu ne. Nihon de wa nanjikan mo agura o kaite suwaru<sup>3</sup> koto mo aru deshō. Nareru no ni sore wa jikan ga kakarimashita yo.  
I: O-furo no hairikata mo zuibun chigau deshō. O-furo no naka de sekken o tsukatte wa ikenai deshō. Sore kara sen o nuite wa ikenai deshō, ato de minna hairimasu kara ne.

## CONVERSATION 15B

### 'Have you ever been to Kamikochi?'

*Mr Brown tells Mr Inoue about his holiday plans:*

- B: Inoue-san, Kamikōchi e itta koto wa arim asu ka.  
I: Mada nai desu yo. Nagano made shigoto de iku koto wa tokidoki arimasu ga Kamikōchi made wa itte kita koto wa nai desu ne. Dōshite desu ka.

- B: Raishū tomodachi to issho ni iku koto ni natte iru n'desu.  
I: Kamikōchi o miru no ni chōdo ii jiki deshō ne. Hachigatsu demo suzushikute kimochi ga ii mitai desu ne.  
B: Inoue-san, issho ni itte mo ii desu yo.  
I: Chotto muri desu. Kaisha no shigoto ga isogashikute kotoshi wa yasumi ga torenai n'desu yo.

### Notes:

1. to iu hodo ja nai desu ga: 'it's not quite what I'd call a culture shock'.
2. kutsu o haite: Japanese uses different words for 'wear' depending on where the article is worn:  
wear a hat = **bōshi o kaburu/kaburimasu**.  
wear glasses = **megane o kakeru/kakemasu**.  
wear a coat, shirt, jacket = **kōto, shatsu, uwagi o kiru/kimasu**.  
wear a dress = **doresu o kiru/kimasu**.  
wear a skirt, trousers, socks, shoes = **sukāto, zubon, kutsushita, kutsu o haku/hakimasu**.  
wear a watch, tie, scarf, gloves = **tokei, nekutai, mafura, tebukuro o suru/shimasu**.
3. agura o kaite: 'sit cross-legged'. 'Sit kneeling' is **seiza o suru/shimasu**.

## Chapter 16

### MAIN POINTS:

Comparing things: A is ... er than B, A is the biggest;  
A is (not) as ... as B.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Comparing England and Japan; (b) The doctor's.

## 102 Comparing things (i)

Consider first the following:

- |                                 |                                    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| A: Which is better?             | Dochira ga ii desu ka.             |
| B: The cheap(er) one is better. | Yasui no ga ii desu.               |
| A: Which car do you prefer?     | Dochira no kuruma ga suki desu ka. |
| B: I prefer the red one.        | Akai no ga suki desu.              |

It will be seen that Japanese adjectives have no comparative forms of their own. **Dochira**, 'which (of two)', itself implies a comparative. 'Which is ...er, A or B?' is translated like this:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| A: Which do you prefer, sumo or baseball? | Sumō to yakyū to dochira ga suki desu ka. |
| B: I prefer baseball.                     | Yakyū ga suki desu ne.                    |

## 103 Comparing things (ii)

You need to know two ways of translating 'A is ...er than B'. The first is **A wa B yori ... desu**:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| My word processor was cheaper than yours. | Watashi no wā-puro wa anata no yori yasukatta desu. |
|---|---|

|   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| Today's weather is better than yesterday's. | Kyō no tenki wa kinō yori ii desu ne. |
|---|---------------------------------------|

The second is **B yori A no hō ga ... desu**:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Japanese is easier than Chinese, you know. | Chūgokugo yori Nihongo no hō ga kantan desu. |
| I prefer the Kansai area to the Kanto.     | Kantō yori Kansai no hō ga suki desu.        |

The difference between them reflects the difference between **wa** and **ga**. **A wa B yori** is a general statement about A. It may be thought of as answering 'Tell me something about A'. **B yori A no hō ga** is more emphatic. It emphasizes A, and may be thought of as answering 'Which is ...er?'. **Yori** may be omitted:

|                     |                             |
|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| Summer is better.   | Natsu no hō ga ii desu ne.  |
| Chieko is prettier. | Chieko no hō ga kirei desu. |

Both constructions are also used with adverbs:

|                               |  |
|-------------------------------|--|
| He speaks faster than I do.   | Kare wa watashi yori hayaku hanashimasu.     |
| She can sing better than you. | Anata yori kanojo no hō ga jōzu ni utaemasu. |

Study carefully the following, in which verbs are used:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Playing golf is more fun than staying at home. | Gorufu o suru no wa uchi ni iru yori tanoshii desu ne. |
| Going by train is quicker than walking.        | Aruku yori densha de iku hō ga hayai desu ne.          |

When in English 'would' is used, in Japanese the verb placed before **hō** is in the **ta** form, but only in the positive:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| It would be easier to walk than to take the bus. | Basu de iku yori aruite itta hō ga kantan desu. |
| It would be cheaper to stay at home.             | Uchi ni ita hō ga yasui desu.                   |
| It would be more sensible not to do that.        | Sō shinai hō ga gōriteki desu yo.               |

'Should (not)' and 'should (not) have' are translated by **-ta (-nai) hō ga ii desu** and **-ta (-nai) hō ga yokatta desu** respectively:



You should apologize  
immediately.  
You shouldn't interrupt.

Perhaps I shouldn't have said  
that.  
You should have brought your  
alien registration card.

Sugu ayamatta hō ga ii  
desu.

Kuchi o dasanai hō ga ii  
desu.

Sō iwanai hō ga yokatta ka  
mo shiremasen.

Gaijin tōrokushō o motte  
kita hō ga yokatta desu.

## Exercise 28

Put into Japanese:

- 1 Do the Japanese work harder than the British?
- 2 We shouldn't have taken the taxi.
- 3 In winter Japan is colder than Britain, you know.
- 4 Which is faster, the bullet train or the new French train?
- 5 Drinking at a bar is more fun than drinking at home.

## 104 Comparing things (iii)

'Much ...er', 'far ...er' may be translated by either **motto** or **zutto**:

A: *That car is much faster  
than this.*

B: *It's much more expensive.*

*You speak far more fluently  
than I do.*

Ano kuruma wa kore yori  
motto hayai desu yo.

Zutto takai n'desu.

Watashi yori zutto ryūchō  
ni hanashimasu.

'A little ...er' is (mō) chotto ... or (mō) sukoshi ...:

*It's a little colder than yesterday.* Kinō yori sukoshi samui  
desu.

*Prices in Tokyo are a little  
higher than in London.*

Tōkyō no bukka wa  
Rondon yori chotto takai  
desu.

## 105 Superlatives

There is no special superlative form of the adjective. Superlatives are made by adding **mottomo** or **ichiban** ('number 1'):

*Learning kanji is one of the  
most enjoyable things.*

*She's the best at table tennis.*

'Which is the ...est, A, B, or C?' requires **naka** or **uchi**:

A: *Which is the prettiest,  
Nagasaki, Yokohama or  
Hakodate?*

B: *Isn't Nagasaki the prettiest  
of them?*

Kanji o oboeru no wa  
mottomo tanoshii koto no  
hitotsu desu.

Takkyū ga ichiban jōzu na  
no wa kanojo desu.

Nagasaki to Yokohama to  
Hakodate no naka de doko  
ga ichiban kirei desu ka.

Sono\* naka de Nagasaki wa  
ichiban kirei ja nai desu ka

\* **Sono**, here, means 'of it/him/her/them'.

Note the use of the particle **de** to mean 'in':

*She's the cleverest pupil in the  
class.*

Kanojo wa kurasu de  
mottomo atama ga ii seito  
desu.

## 106 'How much ...?' 'How ... is it?' 'It's this ...'

'How (much) ...?' is **dore hodo**, **dore gurai** or **dore dake**:

*How much do you need?  
How much can you eat?*

*How tired are you?*

Dore gurai irimasu ka.  
Dore dake (takusan)  
taberemasu ka.

Dore hodo tsukarete imasu  
ka.

Study the following expressions with adjectives and adverbs:

*How late is it?*

**Dore gurai osoi desu ka.**

*How fast does it go?*

**Dore hodo hayaku hashirimasu ka.**

*How big is it?*

**Dore dake ōkii desu ka.**

'This big', 'that much', etc. are translated by **kore** (or **sore**, **are**), **hodo**, **gurai** or **dake** plus an adjective or adverb. **Hodo** is used more in negative sentences:

*Was it about this big?*

**Kore gurai ōkikatta n'desu ka.**

*It wasn't that good, you know.*

**Sore hodo yoku nakatta n'desu yo.**

Learn also the following: **Donna ni** asks 'how?' (meaning 'to what extent?'), and is answered by **konna ni** ('this, to this extent'), **sonna ni** or **anna ni** ('that, to that extent').

*A: How big is it?*

**Donna ni ōkii n'desu ka.**

*B: It's not that big.*

**Sonna ni ōkiku nai n'desu yo.**

## 107 'As ... as ...'

**Gurai** and **hodo** both appear in 'as ... as ...' sentences. **A wa B hodo ...** is used most in negative sentences. Study the following:

*I'm not as clever as him.*

**Watashi wa kare hodo atama ga yoku nai desu.**

*Today isn't as hot as yesterday.*

**Kyō wa kinō hodo atsuku nai desu ne.**

In positive sentences, **A wa B to onaji gurai ...** is perhaps the most common:

*Is Japan (about) as big as Britain?*

**Nihon wa Ijirisu to onaji gurai ōkii desu ka.**

*He's as bad at Japanese as I am.*

**Kare wa watashi to onaji gurai Nihongo ga heta desu.**

'As ... as possible' is **dekiru dake** plus an adverb or adjective:

*Please come as quickly as possible.*

**Dekiru dake hayaku kite kudasai.**

*Go and get as cheap a one as possible.*

**Dekiru dake yasui no o katte kite kudasai.**

## Exercise 29

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 He drinks about as much as I do.
- 2 You shouldn't have said that.
- 3 'Which do you like the best?' 'My favourite one is that blue one.'
- 4 'How big was the fish? Was it this big?' 'No, it wasn't that big, it was a bit smaller than that.'
- 5 I'm not as tall as my big brother, but I'm (about) as strong as he is.

## CONVERSATION 16A

### Comparisons

*Mr Inoue and Mr Brown compare Britain and Japan:*

- B: Inoue-san, Nihon to Eikoku to menseki wa dotchi<sup>1</sup> ga hiroi ka shitte imasu ka. Eikoku no hō ga sukoshi hiroi desu ka.
- I: Chigaimasu yo. Eikoku wa Nihon hodo hiroku nai desu yo.
- B: Ā, sō desu ka. Shikashi jinkō wa Nihon no hō ga zutto ōi deshō?
- I: Sore wa sō desu. Eikoku no nibai<sup>2</sup> ijō<sup>3</sup> ōi n'ja nai desu ka. Sore kara, Nihon no hotondo ga yama na no de sumeru<sup>4</sup> tokoro wa sonna ni nai n'desu yo.
- B: Sō desu ne, jinkō mitsudo wa totemo takai n'desu ne.
- I: Eikoku ni wa yama to iu hodo no mono<sup>5</sup> wa nai mitai desu ne.
- B: Sō demo nai desu yo<sup>6</sup>. Fuji-san hodo takai no wa nai ka mo shiremasen ga Uēruzu toka Sukottorando toka ni wa yama wa ikutsumo arimasu yo.
- I: Hontō desu ka<sup>7</sup>. Sore kara kikō wa zuibun chigaimasu ne. Nihon wa shiki ga hakkiri shite ite<sup>8</sup> Eikoku wa natsu demo fuyu mitai na hi ga takusan aru sō desu ne.
- B: Sono tōri desu. Shikashi Eikoku ni tsuyu toka taifū toka wa nai desu.
- I: Urayamashii desu ne. Eikoku no hō ga anzen na yō desu ne.
- B: Kazan mo nai shi jishin mo arimasen kara ne!

## CONVERSATION 16B

### The doctor's

*Mr Brown goes to the doctor's (I):*

- I: Dō shimashita ka.
- B: I ga itakute tamaranai<sup>9</sup> n'desu.
- I: Sore wa ikemasen ne. Itsu goro kara desu ka.
- B: Mikka hodo mae kara desu.
- I: Sore ja, shatsu o nuide soko de yoko ni natte kudasai ... Rentogen o totta hō ga ii desu ne.

*Several minutes later:*

- I: Tada no ichōen dake desu. Shinpai wa irimasen. Shibaraku no aida o-sake mo tabako mo hikaeta hō ga ii desu ne.
- B: Gohan wa futsū ni tabete mo ii desu ka.
- I: Takusan tabesuginai hō ga ii desu yo. Sore kara karai mono mo hikaeta hō ga ii desu ne. Kusuri o agemasu kara shokuzen ni nonde kudasai.
- B: Arigatō gozaimasu.
- I: O-daiji ni.



## Notes:

1. **dotchi**: abbreviation of **dochira**.
2. **no nibai ... ōi**: 'twice as large'; **bai** is the counter for 'times'.
3. **ijō**: 'more than'.
4. **sumeru tokoro**: 'places where people can live'.
5. **to iu hodo no mono**: 'there is nothing worthy of the name mountain'; lit. 'of the extent that you'd call it a mountain'.
6. **sō demo nai desu yo**: 'that's not quite true, you know'.
7. **hontō desu ka**: 'Really?'
8. **hakkiri shite ite**: **hakkiri suru/shimasu** is 'be clear'; **hakkiri saseru/sasemasu** is 'make clear'. See Chapter 19.
9. **itakute tamaranai**: 'unbearably painful' (lit. 'painful and I can't bear it').

## Chapter 17

### MAIN POINTS:

Some time expressions: before/after/while/when, etc.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Climbing Mount Fuji; (b) A Japanese lesson.

### 108 'While' – *-nagara*

If the subject of both verbs in a 'while' sentence is the same, then **-nagara** is used attached to the stem of the verb:

**tabemasu** → **tabe** → **tabenagara**

**shimasu** → **shi** → **shinagara**

*He always studies while he watches the TV.*

*She was looking at the magazine while having a meal.*

**Itsumo terebi o minagara benkyō shimasu.**

**Gohan o tabenagara zasshi o mite imashita.**

### 109 'While' – *aida*

When the subjects of the two parts of the 'while' sentence are different, **aida (ni)** is used. The tense of the verb which precedes **aida** is generally the same as in English:

*We played cards while the children were asleep.*

*There's something I want to ask you while you're here.*

**Kodomo ga nete ita aida toranpu o yarimashita.**

**Koko ni irassharu aida o-kiki shitai koto ga arimasu ga.**

While I was at university, my  
elder brother was in Korea.

Watashi ga daigaku ni itte  
ita aida ani ga Kankoku  
ni imashita.

Study these miscellaneous expressions involving *aida*:

Where were you during the war?

Sensō no aida doko ni  
irashatta n'desu ka.

I haven't seen her for a long time.  
He should be here between six  
and seven o'clock.

Nagai aida atte imasen.  
Rokuji kara shichiji no aida  
ni kuru hazu desu.

Nagoya is between Osaka and  
Tokyo.

Nagoya wa Ōsaka to Tōkyō  
to no aida ni arimasu.

## 110 'After' – *ato*

In addition to the *te* form plus *kara*, *ato* (*de*) is often used  
(always with the plain past):

After you've finished your  
meal, do come round,  
won't you?

Gohan ga owatta ato (*de*)  
asobi ni kite kudasai ne.

After I had gone to bed, my  
brother phoned.

Watashi ga neta ato o-nī-san  
kara denwa ga arimashita.

Study these additional 'after' phrases:

The concert began after six  
o'clock.

Konsāto wa rokuji sugi ni  
hajimarimashita.

After ten minutes we set off.

Juppun tatte kara  
dekakemashita.

Study these miscellaneous phrases with *ato*:

I'll do it afterwards.  
What happened after that?

Ato de shimasu.  
Sono ato wa dō narimashita  
ka.

After the lesson, we walked  
home.

Jugyō no ato aruite  
kaerimashita.

There are only two minutes left.

Ato nifun shika arimasen.

## 111 'Before' – *mae*

Irrespective of the English tense, only the present tense of  
the Japanese verb can be used with *mae* (*ni*):

Before I leave Japan, I definitely  
want to climb Mt. Fuji.

Nihon o tatsu mae ni zehi  
Fuji-san ni noboritai desu  
ne.

They went out for many years  
before they got married.

Kekkon suru mae ni  
nannenkan mo tsukiatte  
imashita.

Study these miscellaneous expressions using *mae*:

Where did you live before (that)?

(Sono) mae ni doko ni  
sunde irasshaimashita ka.

Before the war, the cost of living  
was much cheaper.

Sensō no mae bukka wa  
motto yasukatta desu.

I gave it to a friend the other day.

Kono mae tomodachi ni  
agemashita.

It's a photo of my last girlfriend.

Watashi no mae no kanojo  
no shashin desu.

## 112 'When' – *toki*

Any tense of the verb or adjective may be used with *toki* (*ni*):

He was already there when I got  
to the airport.

Watashi ga kūkō ni tsuita  
toki kare wa mō kite  
imashita.

When I was going out with her,  
we always went to that bar.

Kanojo to tsukiatte ita toki  
itsumo ano bā ni  
ikimashita.

I get very tired when it's  
humid like today.

Kyō mitai ni mushiatsui toki  
ni taihen tsukaremasu.

Study these miscellaneous expressions involving *toki*:

Which company were you  
working for then?

Sono toki doko no kaisha ni  
tsutomete ita n'desu ka.

When I was a student,  
I played rugby.

Gakusei no toki ragubī o  
yarimashita.

There are times when I think  
I'd like to give up Japanese.

Nihongo o yametai to omou  
toki mo arimasu yo.

## Exercise 30

Put into Japanese:

- 1 Before you got married, did you go out with lots of girls?
- 2 Was that before you went to Japan or after you'd got there?
- 3 While they were talking, I listened to the news.
- 4 While you're out, I think I'll probably watch the TV.
- 5 We went there once before. Don't you remember?

## 113 'When', 'once', 'if' – to

**To** is slightly different from **toki** since it is used to translate 'whenever ...'; 'when/once/if ... (then inevitably) ...'. With **to**, the verb may be in either the plain or **masu** form.

**To** is only used with the present. Also **to** will often be followed by some adverb such as **itsumo** ('always') or **kanarazu** ('inevitably'). Study carefully these examples:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>Whenever I phone her she's out.</i>                         | <b>Kanojo ni denwa suru to itsumo rusu desu.</b>            |
| <i>Whenever I went to that coffee shop I bumped into him.</i>  | <b>Ano kissaten ni iku to kanarazu kare ni deaimashita.</b> |
| <i>When (once) you start to learn Japanese you can't stop.</i> | <b>Nihongo o narai-hajimeru to yamerarenaku narimasu.</b>   |
| <i>Once I've got into the swing of things, I'm O.K.</i>        | <b>Chōshi ga deru to daijōbu desu yo.</b>                   |
| <i>If you turn left here you can't miss it.</i>                | <b>Koko o hidari e magarimasu to sugu wakarimasu.</b>       |

'As soon as' may be expressed by ... **to sugu ...** (or **te kara sugu**):

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| <i>Let's check in as soon as we get to the airport.</i>      | <b>Kūkō ni tsuku to sugu chekku-in shimashō.</b>           |
| <i>As soon as I got home, I made a meal and went to bed.</i> | <b>Uchi e kaette kara sugu gohan o tsukutte nemashita.</b> |

## 114 'Just about to'; 'has/have just'

The noun **tokoro** is used to say 'just about to ...', 'has just ...'. It may be used with the adverbs **ima** ('just now') and/or **chōdo** ('just'). Study the following, noting the tenses:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <i>We're about to go home now.</i>                | <b>Mō kaeru tokoro desu.</b>                                 |
| <i>I was just about to phone.</i>                 | <b>Chōdo denwa o kakeru tokoro deshita.</b>                  |
| <i>I've just got back.</i>                        | <b>Ima chōdo kaette kita tokoro desu.</b>                    |
| <i>I had just started to learn Japanese then.</i> | <b>Sono toki wa Nihongo o narai-hajimeta tokoro deshita.</b> |

In order to say, for example, 'just as I was about to go out, the phone rang', the plain form of **mashō** (see Chapter 11) plus **to suru** is generally used with **tokoro**, **to**, or **toki**. Study the following:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <i>I was just about to go out when the phone rang.</i>           | <b>Chōdo dekeyō to suru tokoro (e) denwa ga narimashita.</b>                        |
| <i>Just as I was about to go to bed the bomb went off.</i>       | <b>Chōdo neyō to suru to bakudan ga bakuhatsu shita n'desu.</b>                     |
| <i>I was just about to phone the police, when she came back.</i> | <b>Chōdo keisatsu ni denwa shiyō to shita toki ni kanojo ga kaette kita n'desu.</b> |



Note here these other miscellaneous expressions involving **tokoro**:

*I saw the cars collide.*

**Kuruma ga shōtotsu suru tokoro o mimashita.**

*Recently I've been really busy.*

**Kono tokoro sugoku isogashii n'desu.**

## 115 Some other common time expressions

'Until' – **made**:

*I shan't go to bed until I've learnt it off by heart.*

*Wait until you're a bit bigger.*

**Kore o anki suru made nemasen.**

**Mō chotto ōkiku naru made matte kudasai.**

'In the middle of' – **saichū**:

*I'm in the middle of writing a letter.*

*I was in the middle of reading the comic.*

**Tegami o kaite iru saichū desu.**

**Manga o yonde iru saichū deshita.**

'Whenever' – **tabi**

This is synonymous with ... **to itsumo** ...:

*Whenever I go by train I leave something behind.*

**Densha ni noru tabi ni nanika wasuremono o shimasu yo.**

'Before' – **uchi**:

'Before' will be translated by **uchi** plus a negative (rather than **mae**) when the idea is that 'something is going to happen soon, but before it does ...':

*Let's tidy up before Mum gets home.*

*Eat it before it gets cold.*

**Okāsan ga kaette konai uchi ni sōji shimashō ne. Samenai uchi ni tabete kudasai.**

'As far as ...', 'as long as ...' – **kagiri**:

*As far as I (can) remember, he's not married.*

*As long as you tell no one, I don't mind.*

**Watashi ga oboete iru kagiri kare wa mada kekkon shite imasen yo.**

**Dare ni mo iwanai kagiri kamaimasen.**

## Exercise 31

Put into Japanese:

- 1 What are you going to be doing while you're over here?
- 2 When I saw the girl he was going out with, I knew why he loved her.
- 3 Once you get to Japan, you won't want to come back home again.
- 4 I haven't eaten sushi for a long time.
- 5 Whenever I drink whisky and wine I get a hangover.

[www.irlanguage.com](http://www.irlanguage.com)



مرجع آموزش زبان ایرانیان

## CONVERSATION 17A

### Climbing Mt. Fuji

*Mr Brown has been invited to the Inoues' for dinner and is telling them what he'd like to do before leaving Japan:*

- Mrs I: Jon-san, shokuji no yōi ga dekimashita.  
Samenai uchi ni dōzo o-meshiagari kudasai<sup>1</sup>.
- B: Itadakimasu.
- Mrs I: Hai, dōzo.
- Mr I: Jon-san, kikoku suru made ato wazuka<sup>2</sup> desu ne. Nihon o tatsu mae ni hoka ni shitai koto toka ikitai tokoro wa nai desu ka.
- B: Arimasu. Kono mae shinkansen ni notte Fuji-san no mae o tōtta toki ni zehi ichido nobotte mitai<sup>3</sup> to omoimashita ga.
- Mr I: Sō desu ka. Sore wa ii kangae desu ne.
- B: Inoue-san wa nobotta koto wa arimasu ka.
- Mr I: Wakai toki ni ichido dake arimasu yo.
- B: Dō deshita ka. Yokatta desu ka.
- Mr I: Nobōtta ato no kimochi wa totemo yokatta desu ga nobotte iru aida wa katta tsura desu ne.
- B: Sō desu ka. Igrisu ni kaeru mae ni zehi ichido nobotte mitai desu ne ... Gochisō-sama deshita.
- Mrs I: O-somatsu-sama deshita.

## CONVERSATION 17B

### A Japanese lesson

*The teacher (S) asks Tom (T), John (J) and Mary (M) some questions:*

- S: Kyō wa 'mae', 'ato', 'toki', 'to' nado no renshū o shimashō ne. Mazu 'mae' o tsukatte bunshō o tsukutte mimashō. Hai, Tomu-san, nandemo ii desu kara dōzo.
- T: Etto, 'Nihon ni kuru mae wa Nihongo wa dekinakatta n' desu ga ima wa sukoshi dekiru yō ni narimashita.'
- S: Ii desu ne. Kondo wa 'ato' o tsukatte bunshō o tsukutte mite kudasai.
- J: 'Jugyō ga owatta ato de tomodachi to bā ni ikimasu. Sono ato ni mō hitotsu no bā e ikimasu.'
- S: Kekkō desu<sup>4</sup>. Tsugi wa 'toki' desu ne.
- M: 'Kono mae bā e itta toki ni o-sake o nondari uta o utattari shimashita.'<sup>5</sup>
- S: Ii desu yo.
- T: Mō hitotsu tsukutte ii desu ka.
- S: Hai, dōzo.
- T: 'Chōdo ie o deyō to shita toki ni Meri kara denwa ga arimashita.'
- S: Totemo ii bunshō desu ne. Saigo ni 'to' no renshū desu ne. Hai, Jon-san.
- J: 'Jugyō ga owaru to itsumo tomodachi to nomi ni ikimasu. Soshite, nomi ni iku to itsumo yopparatte kaette kimasu.'
- S: Ii desu ne.

## Notes:

1. **o-meshiagari kudasai**: 'please eat'; **meshiagaru/meshiagarimasu** is an honorific form of both **taberu/tabemasu** and **nomu/nomimasu** and is therefore used only of others to whom one wishes to show special respect; the form **o-meshiagari kudasai** is an honorific imperative. See Chapter 20.
2. **ato wazuka**: 'there's only a little time left'.
3. **nobotte mitai**: the **te** form plus **miru/mimasu** means 'do something and see' or 'try doing'.
4. **Kekkō desu**: here it means 'that'll do nicely'.
5. **o-sake o nondari, uta o utattari shimashita**: 'I drank alcohol and sang songs'; when describing a series of actions which are not consecutive the so-called **tari** form is used. This is formed by adding **ri** to the **ta** form. Usually the last of a series of **tari** forms is followed by **suru/shimasu**: **terebi o mitari toranpu o shitari shimashita**, 'I watched the TV and played cards.'

## Chapter 18

### MAIN POINTS:

If clauses; some related expressions.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) 'What should I do?' (b) 'We should have taken a taxi!'

## 116 'If' – the *ba* form

Before considering the applications of the various 'if' forms, we must study their formation:

(1) The *ba* form of verbs

All verbs (except **da/desu**) have their *ba* form made in the same way: the final syllable, **-u**, **-ku**, **-gu**, **-su**, **-tsu**, **-nu**, **-bu**, **-mu**, **-ru** (see column 3 of the table on page 8), is changed to the corresponding syllable in column 4:

**arau** → **arae**  
**kaku** → **kake**  
**oyogu** → **oyoge**  
**taberu** → **tabere**

To this *ba* is added. Check you can make the *ba* forms of the following:

|              |   |               |
|--------------|---|---------------|
| <b>yomu</b>  | → | <b>yomeba</b> |
| <b>kuru</b>  |   | <b>kureba</b> |
| <b>suru</b>  |   | <b>sureba</b> |
| <b>deru</b>  |   | <b>dereba</b> |
| <b>matsu</b> |   | <b>mateba</b> |
| <b>iu</b>    |   | <b>ieba</b>   |



Da/desu does not have a **ba** form. Instead, **nara** is used, both with nouns and **na** adjectives; 'if I were you' (lit. 'if it were me') is **watashi nara**; 'if I'm free' is **hima nara**.

(2) The **ba** form of **i** adjectives, of the **tai** form, and of negatives

In all these cases, the final **i** syllable is changed to **-kereba**. Check you can make the **ba** form of the following:

|             |   |                  |
|-------------|---|------------------|
| ataakai     | → | atatakakereba    |
| suzushii    |   | suzushikereba    |
| ikitai      |   | ikitakereba      |
| konai       |   | konakereba       |
| shitaku nai |   | shitaku nakereba |
| ja nai      |   | ja nakereba      |
| oishii      |   | oishikereba      |
| oishiku nai |   | oishiku nakereba |

## 117 'If' – the *tara* form

The **tara** form of ALL verbs, without exception, is made by adding **-ra** to the **ta** form. Check you know the **tara** forms of the following:

|            |   |         |
|------------|---|---------|
| iku        | → | ittara  |
| iru ('be') |   | itara   |
| suru       |   | shitara |
| da         |   | dattara |
| kuru       |   | kitara  |

While this **tara** form is found in polite speech, an extra degree of politeness is given by adding **-ra** to the **mashita** form of any verb:

|                 |   |                   |
|-----------------|---|-------------------|
| arimashita      | → | arimashitara      |
| irasshaimashita |   | irasshaimashitara |
| deshita         |   | deshitara         |

The **tara** form of **i** adjectives, of the **-tai** form and of the negative is made by adding **-ra** to their past tense. Check you know the **tara** form of the following:

|             |   |                   |
|-------------|---|-------------------|
| atsui       | → | atsukattara       |
| kaeritai    |   | kaeritakattara    |
| ōkii        |   | ōkikattara        |
| dekinai     |   | dekinakattara     |
| nai         |   | nakattara         |
| oishiku nai |   | oishiku nakattara |

## 118 'If' – application

Study the following examples, paying particular attention to the tenses:

|  |  |
|--|--|
| If the plane <u>crashes</u> , we <u>will</u> all die, won't we?          | Hikōki ga tsuiraku sureba (shitara) minna shinimasu ne.                      |
| If the bomb <u>blew up</u> on the plane, (the plane) <u>would</u> crash. | Hikoki no naka de bakudan ga bakuhatsu sureba (shitara) tsuiraku suru deshō. |
| If the wing <u>were</u> to come off, the plane couldn't fly.             | Tsubasa ga torereba (toretara) hikōki ga tobenaku naru deshō.                |
| If they <u>hadn't</u> shot the terrorist, she <u>would have</u> escaped. | Terorisuto o uchikorosanakattara nigeta deshō.                               |

**Moshi** very frequently introduces 'if' clauses of all types:

|  |   |
|--|---|
| If it's no good what shall we do?            | Moshi dame dattara dō shimashō.             |
| If I hadn't run I wouldn't have fallen over. | Moshi hashiranakattara korobanakatta deshō. |

Another common type of 'if' clause has **n'dattara** or, more politely, **n'deshitara** attached to a present or past plain form. The meaning is 'if, in fact, ...', or 'if it's the case that ...':

|   |  |
|---|--|
| If you are in fact coming to London do let me know.                       | Moshi Rondon ni irassharu n'deshitara oshiete kudasai.         |
| If it's the case that he's decided to give up Japanese, what shall we do? | Moshi Nihongo o yameru koto ni shita n'dattara dō shimashō ka. |

In many of the examples given above **deshō** has followed the final verb, but there are various other possibilities, such as **ka mo shiremasen**, or **darō to omoimasu**.

## Exercise 32

Put into Japanese:

- 1 If I were you, I think I'd refuse.
- 2 If it rains tomorrow, let's not go.
- 3 If you had come ten minutes earlier, you might have caught the train.
- 4 If it's clean and new I'll buy it.
- 5 If you were to phone him now, he'll probably be in.

## 119 Miscellaneous expressions with *tara* and *ba*

Suggestions are commonly made with the **tara** form plus **dō** or, where extra politeness is demanded, **ikaga**:

*Why don't you come along too, Kunio?* **Issho ni kitara dō desu ka, Kunio.**  
*Why don't you go too, Professor?* **Issho ni irasshaimashitara ikaga desu ka Sensei?**

Asking what one should do, where one should go, etc. may be done with either the **tara** form or the **ba** form followed by **ii desu ka** (lit. 'it'll be good if we do what/go where?'). Note also how to say, for example, 'I don't know what to say':

*What should I say to him?*

**Nani o ittara (ieba) ii desu ka.**

*I don't know what to say.*

**Nani o ittara ii ka wakarimasen.**

*A: How should I explain it?*

**Dō setsumei shitara (sureba) ii desu ka.**

*B: I'm not sure how you should explain it.*

**Dō setsumei shitara ii ka chotto wakarimasen.**

Note that 'I wish ...', 'I hope ...' is **ii n'desu (ga) (ne)** added to one of the 'if' forms:

*I wish it would finish quickly.*

**Hayaku owattara ii n'desu ga ne.**

*I wish it were cheaper.*

**Mō chotto yasukereba ii n'desu ga.**

*I hope I don't have to go.*

**Ikanakute mo ii n'dattara ii n'desu ga.**

*I wish he hadn't come.*

**Ano hito ga konakattara yokatta n'desu ga ne.**

*I wish he hadn't said that.*

**Sore o iwanakereba yokatta n'desu ne.**

*I hope they're on time.*

**Ma ni aeba ii n'desu ga.**

Expressions of the type 'the more ... the more ...' are made with the form **sureba suru hodo ...** (lit. 'if one does something, to the extent one does it, it is ...'). Study carefully the following:

*The more you speak in Japanese, the more fluent you'll become.*

**Nihongo de hanaseba hanasu hodo perapera ni narimasu yo.**

*The more nuclear weapons there are, the more dangerous the world becomes.*

**Kakuheiki ga ōku nareba naru hodo kono yo no naka ga abunaku narimasu ne.**

*The less you eat the thinner you'll get.*

**Tabenakereba tabenai hodo hosoku narimasu.**

It should also be noted that the **tara** form is frequently used (1) to mean 'when', and (2) in negative 'must' clauses. Pay attention to the tenses:

*When you've finished please tell me.*

*When I woke up this morning I had a bad headache. He said you mustn't talk.*

*You mustn't smoke here.*

**Owattara oshiete kudasai.**

**Kesa okitara atama ga sugoku itakatta n'desu. Hanashitara dame da to itte imashita.**

**Koko de tabako o suttara dame desu yo.**

### Exercise 33

*Put into Japanese:*

- 1 Why don't you learn how to write Japanese as well?
- 2 I didn't know what to do or where to go.
- 3 I hope the weather'll get better tomorrow.
- 4 I wish I hadn't bought that car.
- 5 The longer you stay in Japan, the more you'll get to like it.

## CONVERSATION 18A

### 'What should I do?'

*Mr Brown asks Mr Inoue how he can improve his Japanese fluency:*

- B:** Inoue-san, Nihon ni kite kara mō sankagetsu tatte iru<sup>1</sup> no ni Nihongo ga zenzen jōtatsu shite inai yō na ki ga shimasu ga.
- I:** Jōtatsu shite inai wake ja nai desu yo<sup>2</sup>. De mo, mō ni, san-kagetsu shitara<sup>3</sup> kitto motto umaku naru to omoimasu.
- B:** Demo motto hayaku jōzu ni naru ni wa dō shitara ii to omoimasu ka.
- I:** Sō desu ne. Tango no mondai nara mainichi nyūsu o kiite, shiranai kotoba o minna kakitottara dō desu ka. Sō sureba tango no kazu ga fueru deshō.
- B:** De mo, dō shitara motto ryūchō ni shabereru yō ni naru no deshō.
- I:** Sore wa jikan no mondai desu ne.
- B:** Nihon ni kuru mae ni motto benkyō shite okeba<sup>4</sup> yokatta n'desu ne.



## CONVERSATION 18B

**'We should have taken a taxi!'**

*Mr Inoue and Mr Brown are looking for an address:*

**B:** Moshi takushī de itta n'dattara mō tsuite ita ka mo shiremasen ne.

**I:** Iya, mō sugu tsukimasu.

**B:** Demo chizu o kaite moraeba yokatta n'ja nai desu ka.

**I:** Īya, chizu nanka<sup>5</sup> irimasen ... Koko wa Aoyamadōri deshō. Soshitara koko o massugu itte, mittsume no shingō o hidari ni magaru to 2 ban da to omoimasu yo.

**B:** Sō desu ka. Demo dareka ni kiite mitara dō desu ka.

**I:** Ii desu. Ii desu<sup>6</sup>. Sugu chikaku desu kara ...

*After a short while, they're lost:*

**B:** Yappari futatsume no shingō o magareba yokatta n'ja nai desu ka.

**I:** Sō ka mo shiremasen ne. Ato gofun gurai shite mitsukaranakattara takushī o hiroimashō ne.

**B:** (to himself) Attara ne.

*Five minutes later, to a taxi driver:*

**I:** Aoyama 1 chōme 2 ban 6 gō<sup>7</sup> made o-negai shimasu.

## Notes:

- kara sankagetsu tatte iru:** 'three months have passed since ...', 'I've been here for three months'. **Tatsu/tachimasu** means 'pass' (of time).
- wake ja nai desu:** 'it's not the case that'.
- ni, san-kagetsu shitara:** 'in another two or three months', lit. 'if/when another two or three months have passed'; **suru/shimasu** here is used like **tatsu/tachimasu**.
- benkō shite okeba yokatta:** 'I should have studied'; when an action is performed for some future event **te oku/okimasu** is often used. Among very common phrases involving **te oku/okimasu** are **kangaete okimashō** ('Let's think about it') and **(asoko ni) oite oite kudasai** ('Leave it there').
- chizu nan ka:** 'a map or anything', informal.
- Ii desu, ii desu:** 'it's fine as it is', 'we don't need to (ask anyone)'.
- Aoyama 1 chōme 2 ban 6 gō:** the full address would be **Tōkyō-to, Minato-ku, Aoyama 1 chōme 2 ban 6 gō**; very few streets have street names in Japan, and the best way to reach your destination is by asking a policeman! The address system in Japan works in sections rather than streets and begins with the largest unit, here **Tōkyō** city; **Minato-ku** (Minato 'ward') is a section of Tokyo; **Aoyama** is a section of Minato, **1 chōme (itchōme)** is a section of Aoyama, **2 ban** is a subsection of **1 chōme**, and **6 gō** is the 6th plot in **2 ban**.

## Chapter 19

### MAIN POINTS:

The passive, the causative and the passive causative.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) A hangover; (b) An arranged marriage.

## 120 The passive (i)

The passive is formed in the case of all verbs (except **suru/shimasu**) from the negative plain form. Study the following:

Group 1 verbs require **rareru**:

**tabenai** → **tabe** → **taberareru**  
**minai** → **mi** → **mirareru**

Group 2 verbs require **reru**:

**kakanai** → **kaka** → **kakareru**  
**shiranai** → **shira** → **shirareru**  
**kawanai** → **kawa** → **kawareru**

Irregular verbs:

**konai** → **ko** → **korareru**  
**suru/shimasu** → **sareru**

The passives of all verbs now function as Group 1 verbs.

## 121 The passive (ii)

As in English, the Japanese passive is used with transitive verbs. The human agent of the action, when expressed, is generally followed by **ni**. Consider the following:

*I hear that the reporter was kidnapped by terrorists.*

*The politician was arrested by the police.*

*I was told off by the boss.*

**Ano kisha wa terorisuto ni yūkai sareta sō desu.**

**Ano seijika wa keisatsu ni taiho saremashita.**

**Bosu ni shikararemashita.**

The passive is used frequently with verbs of asking and saying, where English may not always use a passive:

*They asked me (J: I was asked) to interpret.*

*We were told to be there by twelve, you know.*

*Who told you?*

**Tsūyaku suru yō ni tanomaremashita.**

**Jūnji made ni kuru yō ni iwareta n'desu yo.**

**Dare ni iwareta n'desu ka.**

The agent of the passive verb can also be followed by **ni yotte** (lit. 'by means of') or **kara** ('from'), particularly when the use of **ni** may lead to ambiguities:

*I was invited to the party by my friend.*

*It's a book written by Mishima.*

**Tomodachi kara pātei ni shōtai sareta n'desu.**

**Mishima ni yotte kakareta hon desu.**

## 122 The passive (iii)

There are two other important uses of the passive. The first is sometimes called the 'passive of inconvenience' because it is often, but not always, used in the sense of 'having something done to one against one's will'. Study carefully the following pairs of sentences:

(He) asked me lots of things.

Takusan no koto o  
kikimashita.

I was asked lots of things  
(by him).

Kare ni takusan no koto o  
kikaremashita.

(They) checked my baggage.  
I had my baggage checked.

Nimotsu o shirabemashita.  
Nimotsu o  
shiraberaremashita.

Somebody stole my passport.

Dareka ga watashi no  
pasupōto o  
nusumimashita.

I had my passport stolen.

Pasupōto o  
nusumaremashita.

He corrected my Japanese.

Nihongo o naoshimashita  
(or naoshite kuremashita).

I had my Japanese corrected.

Nihongo o naosaremashita.

The second special use of the passive is with intransitive verbs. This passive also often expresses 'inconvenience'. Study carefully the following pairs of sentences, of which the first is neutral:

His father died.  
He suffered the death of his  
father.

Otōsan ga shinimashita.  
Otōsan ni shinaremashita.

A visitor came.  
A visitor came (it was  
inconvenient) (J: I was  
'come' by a visitor).

O-kyaku-san ga kimashita.  
O-kyaku-san ni  
koraremashita.

The baby kept crying.

Akachan ga zutto naite  
imashita.

The baby kept crying (it was  
inconvenient) (J: I was 'kept  
cried' by the baby).

Akachan ni zutto nakarete  
imashita.

## Exercise 34

Put into Japanese:

- 1 Our house was broken into (J: entered) by a burglar.
- 2 I had my fingerprints taken when I went to get my Alien Registration Card.
- 3 We were all told off for being late.
- 4 I was asked why I gave up Japanese.
- 5 He was told he would probably soon die.

## 123 The passive (iv)

'Has been done' ('is in a state of having been done') is translated not by a passive but by **te aru/arimasu**:

Has the beer been bought?  
Everybody's been told.  
The letter has been sent.

Bīru wa katte aru n'desu ka.  
Minna ni itte arimasu yo.  
Tegami wa okutte arimasu.

Note here the use of **kaite aru/arimasu**:

A: What does it say on that  
signpost?  
B: It says 'No entry'.

Ano hyōshiki ni wa nan to  
kaite aru n'desu ka.  
Shinnyū kinshi to kaite aru  
n'desu.

It says in the dictionary  
'foreigner'.

Jisho ni wa 'gaijin' to kaite  
arimasu.

## 124 Transitive and intransitive verbs

It will be useful to mention here related pairs of transitive and intransitive verbs and some of their uses. First study the pairs in the following, by no means comprehensive, list:



|                               |                                 |                            |   |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------------------|---|
| open <i>vt.</i>               | <b>akeru/akemasu</b>            | (be) open                  | <b>aku/akimasu</b>                        |
| collect <i>vt.</i>            | <b>atsumeru/<br/>atsumemasu</b> | collect,<br>(be) collected | <b>atsumaru/<br/>atsumarimasu</b>         |
| put in <i>vt.</i>             | <b>ireru/iremasu</b>            | go in                      | <b>hairu/<br/>hairimasu</b>               |
| close <i>vt.</i>              | <b>shimeru/<br/>shimemasu</b>   | (be) close(d)              | <b>shimaru/<br/>shimarimasu</b>           |
| stop <i>vt.</i>               | <b>tomeru/<br/>tomemasu</b>     | stop, stay                 | <b>tomaru/<br/>tomarimasu</b>             |
| attach,<br>turn on <i>vt.</i> | <b>tsukeru/<br/>tsukemasu</b>   | (be) attached<br>to, go on | <b>tsuku/<br/>tsukimasu</b>               |
| build <i>vt.</i>              | <b>tateru/<br/>tatemasu</b>     | stand                      | <b>tatsu/<br/>tachimasu</b>               |
| convey <i>vt.</i>             | <b>tsutaeru/<br/>tsutaemasu</b> | (be) convey(ed)            | <b>tsutawaru/<br/>tsutawari-<br/>masu</b> |
| hand<br>over <i>vt.</i>       | <b>watasu/<br/>watashimasu</b>  | cross over                 | <b>wataru/<br/>watarimasu</b>             |

Care is needed in the use of these verbs. Study the examples with three of the most common of these pairs:

*I'll open the door.  
The door won't open.  
I'm opening the door.  
The door is open.  
Has the door been opened?*

*I'll put it in.  
It won't go in (fit).  
I'm putting it in.  
It is in.  
Has it been put in?*

*I'll turn the radio on.  
The radio won't go on.  
I'm putting the radio on.  
The radio is on.  
Has the radio been put on?*

**Doa o akemasu.  
Doa wa akimasen.  
Doa o akete imasu.  
Doa wa aite imasu.  
Doa wa akete arimasu ka.**

**Iremasu.  
Hairimasen.  
Irete imasu.  
Haitte imasu.  
Irete arimasu ka.**

**Rajio o tsukemasu.  
Rajio wa tsukimasen.  
Rajio o tsukete imasu.  
Rajio wa tsuite imasu.  
Rajio wa tsukete arimasu ka.**

The difference between **aite iru** and **akete aru**, between **haitte iru** and **irete aru**, and between **tsuite iru** and **tsukete aru** is that while both the former and the latter in each case describe a state, the latter implies more emphatically the existence of an agent.

## 125 The causative (i)

The causatives of all verbs (except **suru/shimasu**) are conveniently formed from the negative plain form:

Group 1 verbs require **saseru**:

**tabenai** → **tabe** → **tabesaseru**  
**tsukenai** → **tsuke** → **tsukesaseru**

Group 2 verbs require **seru**:

**ikanai** → **ika** → **ikaseru**  
**yomanai** → **yoma** → **yomaseru**  
**kawanai** → **kawa** → **kawaseru**

Irregular verbs:

**konai** → **ko** → **kosaseru**  
**suru/shimasu** → **saseru**

## 126 The causative (ii)

There are two uses of the causative. The first is 'let somebody do ...'. The second is 'make somebody do ...'. The object of the letting or making is always an inferior of the speaker.

When the verb is intransitive and the object of the letting or making is expressed, the difference is often brought out by the use of the particle **o** for 'make', and the particle **ni** for 'let'. Consider the following:

You must make your husband work more.

Danna-san o motto  
hatarakasenakereba  
narimasen.

Please don't make me laugh.

Watashi o warawasenaide  
kudasai.

You shouldn't cause people trouble.

Hito o komarasete wa  
ikemasen.

Let him go. (e.g. to the shop)

Kare ni ikasete kudasai.

When the verb is transitive even if the person is being made to do something, rather than allowed to do something, that person is followed by the particle **ni**. The context will make it clear to the listener what is intended. Consider the following:

I don't want to let my daughter read those comics.

Musume ni sonna manga o  
yomasetaku nai desu yo.

You should make your husband wash the dishes.

Danna-san ni o-sara o  
arawaseta hō ga ii desu yo.

## 127 The causative (iii)

The causative is used with **kudasaru/kudasaimasu** (and **kureru/kuremasu**) and **itadaku/itadakimasu** (and **morau/moraimasu**), in order to ask permission in a polite way, either from persons of superior status or from persons to whom one wishes, for whatever reason, to show respect:

Please let me do it (for you).

Dōzo sō sasete kudasai.

May I (J: Would you be kind enough to let me) use the phone?

Denwa o tsukawasete  
kudasaimasu ka.

I should like to (J: I'd like to get you to let me) say a word.

Hitokoto iwasete  
itadakitai n'desu.

May I (J: can I get you to let me) take tomorrow off?

Ashita yasumasete  
itadakemasu ka.

## 128 The passive causative

The passive causative (i.e. 'is made to', 'is allowed to') of all verbs is formed from the causative, but the most common form for Group 2 verbs is not quite the same as that for Group 1 verbs.

Group 1 verbs:

tabesaseru → tabesase → tabesaserareru  
misaseru → misase → misaserareru

Group 2 verbs:

ikasen → ika → ikasareru  
kakaseru → kaka → kakasareru

Irregular verbs:

saseru → sase → saserareru  
kosaseru → kosase → kosaserareru

I was made to speak in Japanese. Nihongo de hanasasareta  
n'desu yo.

They were made to sit  
cross-legged for hours.

Nanjikanmo agura o  
kakasaremashita.

Did you want to marry her or  
were you made to?

Kanojo to kekkon  
shitakatta n'desu ka  
soretomo kekkon  
saserareta n'desu ka.

## Exercise 35

Put into Japanese:

- 1 'Is the light on?' 'No, it won't go on.'
- 2 The window has been opened. Who opened it, I wonder?
- 3 We were made to pay for (the cost of) everybody's drinks.
- 4 It says that all the trains will be late.
- 5 I didn't want to go but I was made to.
- 6 Even if he doesn't want to do it, we'll have to make him.

## CONVERSATION 19A

### A hangover

*Mr Brown tells Mr Inoue about his evening in a karaoke bar:*

B: Ohayō gozaimasu.

I: Ohayō. Buraun-san dō shita n'desu ka. Mata futsuka-yoi mitai desu ne.

B: Sō desu. Sakuya tomodachi ni karaoke bā<sup>1</sup> e tsurete ikareta n'desu.

I: Omoshirokatta deshō, karaoke wa.

B: Sō desu ne. De mo utaitaku nai to itta no ni utawasareta n'desu. Ikura onchi da to itte mo Igirisu no uta o kikasete kure to iwarete, kotowaru to okoraresō na ki ga shite 'Gurīn Surībusu' o utaimashita.

I: Uketa deshō.

B: Uketa mitai desu ne. Demo hidokatta desu yo. Nomitaku nakutemo<sup>2</sup> nomasareru n'desu kara.

I: Mō chotto tsuyoku naranai to dame desu ne, Jon-san.

## CONVERSATION 19B

### An arranged marriage

*Yumiko explains to Mr Brown why she's crying:*

B: Dōshite naite iru n'desu ka.

Y: Chichi ga kaigai ryūgaku o sasete kurenai to itta n'desu.

B: Dōshite kyū ni dame da to iwareta n'desu ka.

Y: Chichi wa watashi ni gakkō o sotsugyō shitara hanayome shugyō o saseru tsumori nan desu.

B: Hanayome shugyō tte<sup>3</sup>?

Y: O-cha ya o-hana sore ni ryōri o narattari shite kekkon no junbi o suru koto desu.

B: Kekkō no junbi desu ka. Demo Yumiko wa aite ga iru n'desu ka.

Y: Īe, o-miai o saserareru n'desu.

B: O-miai desu ka. Sore ja, dō suru n'desu ka.

Y: Yappari iwareru tōri ni<sup>4</sup> shinai to dame mitai desu ne.

### Notes:

1. **karaoke**: lit. 'empty (kara) orchestra (oke)'.
2. **nomitaku nakutemo**: 'even though I didn't want to drink'; the **te** plus **mo** means 'even if', 'even though'.
3. **tte**: 'what do you mean by ...'; **tte** is an abbreviation of **to iu koto wa**. See Chapter 20.
4. **iwareru tōri ni**: 'as I am told'.



## Chapter 20

### MAIN POINTS:

Informal and honorific language – a summary.

### CONVERSATIONS:

(a) Out shopping; (b) A telephone message.

## 129 Informal Japanese

A few of the characteristics of informal speech are dealt with here principally to enable you to understand it when it is spoken either to you or in your presence. Informal speech is used in informal situations when addressing family members, close friends and social inferiors. It is not used in more formal situations and never used when addressing strangers or people of superior status. The speaker has to judge for him or herself when informal speech is permissible.

There are various features of informal speech. Omission, particularly of particles, is common and abbreviated forms are also very common. The most characteristic feature, though, is the use of the plain form of verbs and adjectives. In each case below only a small selection of the many possibilities has been given.

## 130 Plain forms

In informal speech note that (a) with nouns and na adjectives, **da** is frequently omitted; (b) in requests **ka** is often omitted, and **no** may replace it; (c) **no (ka)** is used as the plain form of **n'desu (ka)**. Study the following pairs:

- |   |                    |
|---|--------------------|
| A: <i>Are you off now?</i>                | Mō kaeru?          |
| B: <i>Yeah, I'm off.</i>                  | N, kaeru.          |
| A: <i>Is it tomorrow?</i>                 | Ashita?            |
| B: <i>It's tomorrow, it seems.</i>        | Ashita mitai yo.   |
| A: <i>Is she pretty?</i>                  | Kirei na no*?      |
| B: <i>Yep.</i>                            | Kirei da* yo.      |
| A: <i>What's up?</i>                      | Dō shita no?       |
| B: <i>I've hurt my leg.</i>               | Ashi ga itakute.   |
| A: <i>That's expensive, isn't it?</i>     | Are wa takai ne.   |
| B: <i>Yep, that is expensive.</i>         | N, takai (no)* yo. |
| A: <i>Shall we go out for a drink?</i>    | Nomi ni ikō.       |
| B: <i>Yeah, let's.</i>                    | N, ikō.            |
| A: <i>What's that?</i>                    | Are wa nani?       |
| B: <i>I don't know.</i>                   | Shiranai.          |
| A: <i>Who's that?</i>                     | Ano hito wa dare?  |
| B: <i>I wonder.</i>                       | Dare darō?         |
| A: <i>It's useless, isn't it?</i>         | Dame da* ne.       |
| B: <i>Yep, it's useless.</i>              | N, dame da* yo.    |
| A: <i>You've understood, haven't you?</i> | Wakatta ne?        |
| B: <i>I've got it.</i>                    | N, wakatta wa*.    |

\* **da** will be omitted in women's informal speech  
**no** is particularly characteristic of women's informal speech  
**wa** is characteristic of women's speech

## 131 Omission

In informal speech, particles **wa**, **ga**, **o**, **ni**, **e** may be omitted provided that the meaning remains clear; **kudasai** in imperatives may be omitted; entire clauses after conjunctions like **kara** and **ga** may be omitted; other omissions are also possible. Consider the following pairs with particles omitted:

- |                                   |                           |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------|
| A: I'll do it.                    | <b>Watashi yaru.</b>      |
| B: Really?                        | <b>Sō?</b>                |
| A: What's that?                   | <b>Are nani?</b>          |
| B: I don't know.                  | <b>Wakaranai.</b>         |
| A: Can you write? (e.g. Japanese) | <b>Kaku koto dekiru?</b>  |
| B: Yes.                           | <b>Dekiru yo.</b>         |
| A: It feels good, doesn't it?     | <b>Kimochi ii ne.</b>     |
| B: It does, doesn't it?           | <b>Kimochi ii ne.</b>     |
| A: What're you doing?             | <b>Nani shite'ru?</b>     |
| B: I'm reading.                   | <b>Hon yonde'ru.</b>      |
| A: Where are you going?           | <b>Doko iku?</b>          |
| B: Nowhere.                       | <b>Doko mo ikanai yo.</b> |

Imperatives without **kudasai**:

- |                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| Don't (J: stop)! | <b>Yamete.</b>      |
| Come here!       | <b>Kotchi kite.</b> |
| Drink this!      | <b>Kore nonde.</b>  |

Clauses omitted:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| A: Have you got any money?   | <b>O-kane aru ka.</b>                                 |
| B: Yes, I have; (e.g., why do you ask?).                                 | <b>Aru kedo ...</b>                                   |
| I want to be off early tomorrow (so e.g. I need an early night tonight). | <b>Ashita hayaku deketai kara ...</b>                 |
| I must be off now.   | <b>Mō kaeranakucha ...</b><br>(e.g. narimasen)        |
| Why don't you go to sleep straight away?                                 | <b>Sugu netara (e.g. dō desu ka)?</b>                 |
| Don't forget.  | <b>Wasurenai yō ni ... (e.g. chūi shite kudasai).</b> |

## 132 Abbreviations

Here is a selection of common abbreviations, some of which have been covered above. The non-abbreviated form is given in brackets:

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>You mustn't eat that.</i>          | <b>Tabecha (te wa) dame yo.</b>          |
| <i>O. K. then, let's go.</i>          | <b>Sore ja (de wa) ikō ka.</b>           |
| <i>I don't want anything.</i>         | <b>Nanimo iran (iranai).</b>             |
| <i>What're you doing?</i>             | <b>Nani shite'ru (te iru)?</b>           |
| <i>I'm not doing anything.</i>        | <b>Nanimo shite'nai (te inai).</b>       |
| <i>I was waiting for hours.</i>       | <b>Nanjikan mo matte'ta (te ita) yo.</b> |
| <i>I'll leave it there.</i>           | <b>Asoko ni oit'oku (te oku).</b>        |
| <i>I'll make it for you.</i>          | <b>Tsukutt'ageru (te ageru).</b>         |
| <i>Even I can't do it.</i>            | <b>Watashi datte (de mo) dekinai.</b>    |
| <i>Where did he say he was going?</i> | <b>Doko iku'tte (to itta/itte ita)?</b>  |
| <i>What does o-miai mean?</i>         | <b>O-miai'tte (to iu no wa)?</b>         |

Finally note that in informal Japanese there are some alternatives for 'I' and 'you': 'I' (in men's speech only) may be **boku** or **ore**; 'you' may be **kimi** or **o-mae**.

### CONVERSATION 20A

#### Out shopping

A boy (B) and his girlfriend (A) buy some clothes:

- |    |                                     |
|----|-------------------------------------|
| A: | <b>Kore haite mitara?</b>           |
| B: | <b>Kore?! Jōdan! Konna no iran!</b> |
| A: | <b>Dō shite? Ii no ni'.</b>         |
| B: | <b>Shumi ja nai yo. Kore dō?</b>    |
| A: | <b>Ii yo. Haite miru?</b>           |
| B: | <b>N, haite miyō.</b>               |

→

Several minutes later:

- B: Chotto nagai n' ja nai?  
 A: Sonna koto nai wa yo. Chōdo ii n'ja nai no?  
 B: Ja, kaō ka ... Sumimasen, kore (o) o-negai shimasu.  
 X: Hai, yonsen en de gozaimasu ... chōdo yonsen en o-azukari itashimasu.  
 B: Yokatta ne. Kōcha demo nomi ni ikō ka.

### Notes:

1. *ii no ni*: 'they're nice'; *no ni* expresses regret.

## 133 Honorific Japanese

Here it will be possible to touch on only a few of the more common features of honorific speech. Honorific language will be used when you wish to show respect, appreciation or concern, especially to the person you are talking to but also to the person you are talking about. Two types of honorific language may be distinguished: 'deferential' and 'humble'. Deferential language involves 'elevating' the person spoken to (or about) by certain verbs or verb forms; humble language involves the speaker 'lowering' himself or others out of respect for the person spoken to (or about) by the use of certain verbs and verb forms. Many of these have already appeared in conversations above.

## 134 Deferential & humble verbs and verb forms

Consider first some common verbs which have deferential and humble alternatives:

| <i>Neutral</i>                                  | <i>Deferential</i>  | <i>Humble</i>  |
|---|---|--|
| iru/imasu                                       | irassharu/<br>irasshaimasu                                  | oru/orimasu  |
| iku/ikimasu<br>kuru/kimasu                      | irassharu/<br>irasshaimasu<br>oide ni naru/<br>narimasu     | mairu/<br>mairimashita<br>ukagau/<br>ukagaimasu        |
| suru/shimasu<br>iu/iimasu                       | nasaru/nasaimasu<br>ossharu/<br>osshaimasu                  | itasu/itashimasu<br>mōsu/<br>mōshimasu                 |
| taberu/tabemasu<br>nomu/nomimasu<br>miru/mimasu | meshiagaru/<br>meshiagarimasu<br>goran ni naru/<br>narimasu | itadaku/<br>itadakimasu<br>haiken itasu/<br>itashimasu |
| kiku/kikimasu                                   | (o-kiki ni naru/<br>narimasu)                               | ukagau/<br>ukagaimasu                                  |
| shiru/shirimasu                                 | gozonji desu  | zonjiru/<br>zonjimasu                                  |

(Brackets indicate verbs that can take more than one form; e.g. *iku/ikimasu* can be either *irassharu/irasshaimasu* or *oide ni naru/narimasu* in its deferential form.)

Those verbs which do not have special deferential or humble forms can be made deferential or humble in various ways, the most common being as follows. Note that the passive is frequently used as a deferential form:

| <i>Neutral</i>                 | <i>Deferential</i>                                 | <i>Humble</i>           |
|--------------------------------|--|-------------------------|
| kaku/kakimasu                  | o-kaki ni naru/<br>narimasu                        | o-kaki suru/<br>shimasu |
| kaku/kakimasu<br>yomu/yomimasu | kakareru/kakaremasu<br>o-yomi ni naru/<br>narimasu | o-yomi suru/<br>shimasu |
| yomu/yomimasu                  | yomareru/<br>yomaremasu                            |                         |



Study the following:

*This is the book the Professor wrote.*

*You know when it is, don't you?*

*What did he say?*

*I'm not doing anything.*

*I've met you before.*

*Do start (your meal)!*

*What do you think, Professor?*

*When will he be going home?*

*I wonder if you could help me  
(J: I should like to inquire) ...*

Remember the use of **itadaku/itadakimasu** in honorific language:

*I should like to take you around Nara.*

*May I use the phone?*

*Would you be kind enough to wait just a little longer?*

Honorific imperatives you should be able to recognize:

*Please wait a minute.*

*Please start!*

*Please take a seat.*

**Kore wa Sensei ga o-kaki ni natta hon desu.**

**Itsu ka go-zonji desu ne.**

**Nan to osshaimashita ka.**

**Nanimo shite orimasen.**

**Mae ni o-me ni kakarimashita.**

**Dōzo meshiagatte kudasai.**

**Sensei, dō omowaremasu ka.**

**Itsu o-kaeri ni naru n'desu ka.**

**O-tazune shimasu ga ...**

**Nara o (go-)annai sasete itadakitai n'desu ga.**

**Denwa o tsukawasete itadakemasu ka.**

**Mō sukoshi matte itadakemasen ka.**

**Shōshō o-machi kudasai.**

**O-meshiagari kudasai.**

**Dōzo o-kake kudasai.**

## 135 Honorific nouns and adjectives

Nouns and adjectives too have honorific forms. Some nouns and adjectives have honorific alternatives: **hito** becomes **kata**; **dare** becomes **donata** or **dochirasama**; **doko** becomes **dochira**; **ii** becomes **yoroshii**. Some nouns are made honorific, as you know, by placing either **go** or **o** in front of them. Some adjectives are made honorific by placing **o** before them. A number of verbs are regularly preceded, in honorific speech, by **o** and followed by **desu**: **dekakeru** → **o-dekake desu**. Study the examples below:

*Is this O.K.?*

*Who are you (who's speaking)?*

*What are you studying?*

*When did you get married?*

*A: Will you eat here?*

*B: No, I'll take it away.*

Note too some examples of adjectives preceded by **o**:

*I'm sure you are very busy,  
but ...*

*You are young, aren't you?*

**Kore de yoroshii desu ka.**

**Dochira sama de irasshaimasu ka.**

**Nani o go-benkyō nasatte iru n'desu ka.**

**Itsu go-kekkon nasaimashita ka.**

**Kochira de o-meshiagari desu ka.**

**Īe, motte kaerimasu.**

**O-isogashii deshō ga ...**

**O-wakai desu ne.**

Before finishing this chapter you are advised to refer back to the following Conversations which contain various examples of honorific speech: 2c, 3a, 4a, 5c, 7b, 9a,b, 10b, 14a, 17a.

## CONVERSATION 20B

### A telephone message

*Mr Tanaka (A) talks to a secretary (B):*

**A: Yoshida-san wa irasshaimasu<sup>1</sup> deshō ka.**

**B: Dochira-sama de irasshaimasu ka.**

**A: Tanaka to mōshimasu ga.**

**B: Shōshō o-machi kudasai ... Tadaima sekki o hazushite orimasu ga ...**

**A: Sō desu ka. O-kotozuke o o-negai dekimasu<sup>1</sup> deshō ka.**

**B: Hai dōzo.**

**A: Ashita 11ji goro o-ukagai shimasu<sup>2</sup> no de sō osshatte kudasai.**

**B: Kashikomarimashita. O-tsutae itashimasu.**

## Key to Exercises

### Notes:

1. **masu deshō ka:** in honorific speech **masu** forms are commonly used where plain forms would otherwise be adequate.
2. **o-ukagai shimasu:** here it means 'I shall visit'.

**Exercise 1:** 1 (Watashi wa) gakusei ja arimasen. Anata wa? 2 '(Sore wa) shinkansen desu ka.' 'Chigaimasu.' 3 '(Kanojo wa) Nihonjin desu ka. Chūgokujin desu ka.' 'Sō desu ne.' 4 '(Kore wa) kanai desu.' 'Hajimemashite.' 5 '(Kanojo wa) Kankokujin desu.' 'A, sō desu ka.'

**Exercise 2:** 1 '(Sore wa) hontō no kōhī desu ne.' 'Īe chigaimasu. Insutanto desu.' 2 'Ki-iro no kuruma wa anata no desu ka.' 'Chigaimasu. Watashi no kuruma wa midori-iro desu.' 3 'Kōhī wa?' 'O-negai shimasu.' 4 Asoko no hito wa Nihonjin ja arimasen. 5 (Kore wa) kyō no shinbun ja arimasen yo.

**Exercise 3:** 1 'Asoko no hito wa dare desu ka.' 'Mado no mae no hito desu ka.' 2 (Kore wa) kyō no shinbun desu ka. Kinō no shinbun desu ka. 3 'Sumimasen. Toire wa dochira desu ka.' 'Achira desu.' 4 'Nan desu ka.' 'Watashi no kippu desu yo.' 5 'Sashimi wa dō desu ka.' 'Māmā desu.'

**Exercise 4:** 1 Kōhī wa arimasu ka. 2 Basu de kūkō made (e) ikimasu ka. 3 Pasupōto wa asoko desu/ni arimasu. 4 (Watashi wa) Nihongo de hanashimasu. 5 Ikeda-san wa ashita irasshaimasen/orimasen/imasen.

**Exercise 5:** 1 Saifu ni o-kane ga arimasu. 2 'O-kane wa hikidashi no naka ni arimasen.' 'Doko ni arimasu ka.' 3 'Kare wa Nihongo mo Chūgokugo mo hanashimasu.' 'Sō desu ka.' 4 'Dare ga tegami o dashimasu ka.' 'Watashi ga dashimasu.' 5 Kyō wa ikimasen. Ashita wa ikimasu.

**Exercise 6:** 1 Yūbe nomi ni ikimasen deshita. 2 Sugu uchi e kaerimashita. 3 Sashimi wa tabemasen deshita. 4 Shōyu to sashimi wa asoko ni arimasu. 5 Mō sugu owarimasu. 6 Hanbāgā to kōhī (o) o-negai shimasu. 7 Kanojo to Nihongo de hanashimasen deshita ka.

**Exercise 7:** 1 'Nannin issho ni ikimashita ka.' 'Hitori de ikimashita.' 2 Rokujūen no kitte o jūmai kudasai. 3 'Koko kara Nagasaki made ikura desu ka.' 'Niman'en desu.' 4 Kare ni jukkai denwa shimashita. 5 Watashi no denwa bangō wa 654 no 2908 desu.

**Exercise 8:** 1 'Pātei e nannin kimashita ka.' 'Sannin shika kimasen deshita.' 2 Bīru o mō ippai dake o-negai shimasu. 3 Itsu goro ikimasu ka. 4 Sore ni kami o nanmai tsukaimashita ka. 5 (Kore wa) roppaime no bīru desu.

**Exercise 9:** 1 Kyō wa totemo atsukatta desu ne. 2 Shikki o kai ni ikimashita ga arimasen deshita. 3 Kono o-cha wa amari oishiku nakatta desu ne. 4 Se no takai hito wa chichi desu. Se no hikui hito wa chichi no tomodachi desu. 5 Totemo yasashii hito desu.

**Exercise 10:** 1 'Dō yatte gakkō e ikimasu ka.' 'Watashi wa basu de ikimasu.' 2 Totemo jōzu ni hanashimasu ne. 3 'Ōkisa wa?' 'Ōkisa wa chōdo ii desu.' 4 Ano Toyota wa tomodachi no to onaji desu. 5 Yoku sukī ni ikimasu ka.

**Exercise 11:** 1 Hagaki o nimai to (ni) kitte o rokumai katte kimasu. 2 Asoko ni suwatte matte kudasai. 3 Kyōto e itte Ryōanji o mite kaette kimashita. 4 'Aruite nanpun gurai kakarimasu ka.' 'Chotto wakarimasen ga basu de (wa) nijuppun gurai kakarimasu.' 5 O-tō-san o yonde kite kudasai.

**Exercise 12:** 1 'Ano Nakajima Miyuki no uta wa oboete imasen ka.' 'Oboete imasen ne.' 2 'Doko no daigaku e itte imasu ka.' 'Watashi wa daigaku e itte imasen. Hataraitte imasu.' 3 'Sumimasen. Yūbinkyoku wa nanji kara nanji made aite imasu ka.' 'Shirimasen.' 4 'Sakana-ya no tonari no kissaten o shitte imasu ka.' 'Īe, shirimasen.' 5 'Ryōshin no tokoro e kaette imasu.' 'Itsu kaerimashita ka.'

**Exercise 13:** 1 'Itsu kara shodō o renshū shite imasu ka.' 'Rokunen gurai mae kara desu.' 2 Maitoshi rokugatsu ni sanshūkan gurai ryokō shimasu. 3 Kono utsukushii kuni ni itsu kara imasu/irasshaimasu ka. 4 Isogashikute mada yonde imasen. 5 Yonjū gonenkan kekkon shite imasu.

**Exercise 14:** 1 'Dōshite atarashii sūtsukēsu o futatsu katta n'desu ka.' 'Raishū kaigai e iku n'desu.' 2 'Osoku kaette kita n'desu.' 'Dōshite desu ka.' 3 Nihongo o yameta n'desu. 4 Naze konakatta n'desu ka. 5 Bōifurendo ga Amerika ni kaetta no de naite iru n'desu.

**Exercise 15:** 1 Mō owatta deshō? 2 Ashita Nihon o tatsu yotei deshita. 3 Ashita kuru ka mo shiremasen. 4 Sonna hon wa takaku nai hazu desu. 5 Iu tsumori deshita ga wasuremashita.

**Exercise 16:** 1 Haha ga tanjōbi ni kore o kureta n'desu. 2 Sensei, kore o sashiagemasu. 3 Shachō wa oku-san ni hon o moraimashita. 4 Tomu-san, kore o agemashō. 5 Yumiko wa Kunio ni purezento o agemashita/kuremashita ka.

**Exercise 17:** 1 Kunio, katte ageru yo. 2 Koko ni o-namae o kaite kudasaimasu ka. 3 Rokuji ni kite moraimasu. 4 Kunio wa sensei ni haratte itadakimashita. 5 Shachō ga kanai ni katte kudasaimashita.

**Exercise 18:** 1 Doko ni sunde iru ka shitte iru ka dō ka kiite kudasai. 2 Doko ni sunde iru ka oshiete itadakemasen ka. 3 Hiru made ni kuru yō ni (kite kureru yō ni) tanomimashita ga yoji made ni kuru to itte imashita. 4 Sensei wa seito ni tatte kure to (tatsu yō ni) iimashita. 5 Naze Nihongo o yameru ka kikimashita ka.

**Exercise 19:** 1 'Hakubutsukan (to iu kotoba) wa dō iu imi desu ka.' ' "Museum" to iu imi desu.' 2 Kanojo to nagai aida tsukiatte imashita. Sore kara kekkon suru to iu koto o kikimashita. 3 Rainen mata koyō ka to omotte imasu. 4 Konai to itte imashita. 5 'Nan to iimashita ka.' 'Tsukarete iru kara mō neru to iimashita.' 6 Mada denwa shite inai to iu koto wa jiko ni atta to iu imi ja nai desu yo.



**Exercise 20:** 1 'Ano uta wa suki ja nai desu ka.' 'Daikirai desu.' 2 'O-nī-san no jōzu na supōtsu wa nan desu ka.' 'O-nī-san wa yakyū ga jōzu desu.' 3 Kanojo wa me ga totemo kirei desu. 4 Watashi wa kodomo ga futari imasu. Anata wa? 5 Nihongo wa dekimasu ga Kankokugo wa mada dekimasen. 6 Irimasen kara agemasu. 7 Kanojo wa ano takai doresu ga hoshii to itte imasu yo. 8 'Dekimasu ka.' 'Dekimasen. Kare ni dekiru ka dō ka kiite kuremasu ka.'

**Exercise 21:** 1 Watashi wa ikitaku nai desu. Kanojo mo ikitaku nai to itte imasu. 2 Iranai deshō? 3 O-nī-san mo ikitai to itte imashita ka. 4 Doa no kagi o shimeru yō ni shite kudasai ne. 5 O-kane wa minna naku natte imasu. 6 Kowasanai yō ni chūi shite kudasai.

**Exercise 22:** 1 Kyonen Nihonjin no onna no ko to kekkon shita rashii/mitai/sō desu. 2 Ano sashimi wa hontō ni oishisō desu ne. 3 Konsāto ga mō owatta mitai/rashii/yō desu, kara nomi ni ikimashō ka. 4 'Hashi o dō yatte tsukaimasu ka.' 'Watashi no yō ni tsukatte kudasai.' 5 Kanojo no yō na hito ga daikirai desu. Minna to kenka suru rashii/mitai/sō desu kara.

**Exercise 23:** 1 Mō haru ni natta to iu ki ga/kanji ga shimasu. 2 Konban dekakeru ki ga shimasen ka. 3 Nagai aida tabete inai yō na kao o shite imasu. 4 Ano ie wa o-tera no yō na katachi o shite imasu. 5 Nanika nioi ga shimasen ka.

**Exercise 24:** 1 Ano yane no akai kuruma wa suki desu. 2 Kōhī o nonde iru onna no ko wa dare desu ka. 3 Nihon wa jinkō ga/no totemo ōi kuni desu. 4 Ima anata ga hanashite ita otoko no hito wa dare desu ka. Mukashi kara shitte iru hito desu ka. 5 Kore wa Tanaka-san ga oku-san ni katte ageta hon desu. 6 Koko wa sore o katta o-mise desu.

**Exercise 25:** 1 Kono chikaku ni dokoka shizuka na tokoro wa arimasu ka. 2 Ano hito wa donna supōtsu ga dekimasu ka. 3 Hon o nansatsumo kaimashita. 4 Asoko ni daremo Eigo ga dekiru hito wa inakatta n'desu. 5 Konban terebi de nanimo omoshiroi bangumi wa yatte imasen.

**Exercise 26:** 1 'Issho ni itte mo ii desu ka.' 'Īe, hitori de ikanakereba narimasen.' 2 Rokuji made ni kaette koraremasu (koremasu) ka. 3 Nihongo de kakanakute mo ii desu. Rōmaji de kaite mo ii desu. 4 Sono yō ni hanashite wa ikemasen. 5 'Ichiman'en de ii deshō?' 'Ii desu yo.' 6 Keisatsu ni denwa o shinakereba narimasen deshita.

**Exercise 27:** 1 'O-tera o mi ni iku no/koto wa suki desu ka.' 'Suki desu yo, anata wa?' 2 'Manjū o tabeta koto wa arimasu ka.' 'Nai desu. Dōshite desu ka.' 3 Densha ja nakute kuruma de iku koto ni shimashita. 4 'Ie de Nihongo o hanasu koto wa arimasu ka.' 'Tokidoki arimasu.' 5 Itsumo okurete iru no wa dōshite desu ka.

**Exercise 28:** 1 Nihonjin wa Eikokujin yori yoku hatarakimasu ka. 2 Takushī de ikanai hō ga yokatta desu. 3 Fuyu wa Eikoku yori Nihon no hō ga samui desu yo. 4 Dochira ga hayai desu ka. Shinkansen soreto Fūransu no atarashii densha? 5 Ie de nomu yori bā de nomu hō ga tanoshii desu.

**Exercise 29:** 1 Kare wa watashi to onaji gurai (takusan) nomimasu. 2 Iwanai hō ga yokatta desu. 3 'Dore ga ichiban suki desu ka.' 'Watashi no ichiban suki na no wa ano aoi no desu.' 4 'Sakana wa dore gurai/dake/hodo ōkikatta desu ka. Kore gurai/dake/hodo ōkikatta desu ka.' 'Chigaimasu. Sonna ni ōkiku nakatta desu. Mō chotto chīsakatta desu.' 5 Ani hodo se ga takaku nai desu ga kare to onaji gurai tsuyoi desu.

**Exercise 30:** 1 Kekkon suru mae ni takusan no onna no ko to tsukiaimashita ka. 2 Nihon ni iku mae desu ka Soretomo Nihon ni tsuita ato desu ka. 3 Karera ga hanashite ita aida watashi wa nyūsu o kiite imashita. 4 Dekakete iru aida terebi o miyō ka to omoimasu. 5 Mae ni ikkai ikimashita ga oboete imasen ka.

**Exercise 31:** 1 Koko ni iru aida nani o suru tsumori desu ka. 2 Kare ga tsukiatte iru onna no ko o mita toki kare ga dōshite kanojo o aishite iru ka sugu wakarimashita. 3 Nihon ni iku to kaette kitaku naku narimasu. 4 Nagai aida sushi o tabete imasen. 5 Uisukī to wain o nomu tabi ni/to itsumo futsukayoi ni narimasu.

**Exercise 32:** 1 Watashi nara kotowaru to omoimasu yo.  
2 Ashita ame nara/dattara/deshitara iku no o yamemashō.  
3 Moshi juppun hayaku kita n'dattara densha ni ma ni atta ka mo shiremasen. 4 Kirei de atarashikattara kaimasu. 5 Ima sugu denwa shitara iru darō to omoimasu.

**Exercise 33:** 1 Nihongo o kaku koto mo narattara dō desu ka. 2 Dō shitara ii ka doko e ittara ii ka wakarimasen deshita. 3 Ashita tenki ga yoku nattara ii desu ga ne. 4 Ano kuruma o kawanakattara yokatta n'desu ga ne. 5 Nihon ni nagai aida ireba iru hodo suki ni naru n'desu.

**Exercise 34:** 1 Ie wa dorobō ni hairareta n'desu. 2 Gaikokujin tōrokushō o tori ni itta toki ni shimon o torareta n'desu. 3 Okureta kara minna shikararemashta. 4 Naze Nihongo o yameta ka kikaremashta. 5 Kare wa mō sugu shinu darō to iwaremashta.

**Exercise 35:** 1 'Denki wa tsuite imasu ka.' 'Īe tsukimasen.'  
2 Mado wa akete arimasu. Dare ga aketa deshō ka. 3 Minna no nomimono-dai o harawasareta n'desu. 4 Densha wa minna okureru to kaite arimasu. 5 Ikitaku nakatta n'desu ga ikasareta n'desu. 6 Kare ga yaritaku nakutemo yarasenakereba narimasen.

## Key to Conversations

### Conversation 2A

- B: Chieko, this is Professor Emura from Tokyo University.  
Professor Emura, this is my wife Chieko.  
C: Pleased to meet you.  
B: My wife is an English teacher.  
E: Oh, really? How do you do?  
B: Professor, this is my son David. David's a primary school pupil.  
E: Ah, is that so? Pleased to meet you.  
D: Pleased to meet you.

### Conversation 2B

- A: Excuse me, are you an American?  
B: No, I'm not. I'm English.  
A: Oh, really? Are you a student?  
B: Yes, I am. I'm a student in the Japanese department of London University.  
A: I see. I'm a businessman, you know. Forgive me, but what's your name?  
B: Mike.  
A: Mike, is it? I'm Kunio, Sato Kunio. Pleased to meet you.  
B: Pleased to meet you too.

### Conversation 2C

- B: Excuse me, but this is the Dai Ichi hotel, isn't it?  
P: No, it's not, actually. The Dai Ichi is the hotel over there.  
B: Ah, it's over there, is it? Thank you very much.  
P: Not at all.

- I: Excuse me, but are you Mr Brown of ICI?  
B: Yes, that's right.  
I: Pleased to meet you. My name is Ikeda. I'm from Mitsui. How do you do?  
B: Pleased to meet you, too.  
I: Here's my card.  
B: Ah, thank you very much. And this is mine too.

### Conversation 3A

- B: Excuse me, my name is Brown. Is Mr Tanaka in?  
C: Tanaka is not in at the moment.  
B: Really? I'll call back later then.

### Conversation 3B

- A: Excuse me, where are we? Is this Shinjuku?  
B: No, it's not. It isn't Shinjuku. Umm, it's Shibuya.  
A: Is it? Does it go to Shinjuku?  
B: Umm, just a sec. Yes, it stops in Shinjuku.  
A: Is it the next one?  
B: No, it isn't. It's the one after next.  
A: Thank you.

### Conversation 3C

- B: Mr Katayama, hello!  
K: Mr Brown? I haven't seen you for ages. Are you well?  
B: Yes, thank you, I am. And you, Mr Katayama?  
K: Yes, I'm well.  
B: Mr Katayama, how about it, won't you have a cup of tea or something?  
K: Yes, let's go and have a cup. Umm, how about the coffee shop by the station?  
B: You mean Kadota, don't you? Yes, that'll be fine.  
K: Shall we go by car or shall we walk?  
B: Let's walk.

### Conversation 4A

- W: Welcome!  
W: What will you have?  
B: Umm, what's the breakfast today?  
W: Egg and toast.  
B: O.K. then, one breakfast, please.  
W: A breakfast with coffee is that? Or with tea?  
B: Coffee, please. No, no. I'll make it tea after all.  
W: Will that be milk tea?  
B: Yes.  
W: Right, that's one breakfast with milk tea, isn't it. Please wait for a short while.  
B: Excuse me. Have you got today's paper?

W: Yes, the papers are over there. We've got the Asahi and the Mainichi but we haven't got any English-language papers.

W: Your breakfast with milk tea. I'm sorry to have kept you waiting.

B: Thank you.

B: The bill, please.

W: Certainly, sir.

### Conversation 4B

- B: Excuse me, is there a taxi rank near here?  
P: A taxi rank? Umm, just a second. There was one near the bus stop in front of that department store.  
B: Thank you very much.

B: To Tarumi station, please.

D: Which part of the station do you want?

B: The front of the station, please.

D: O.K.

B: Driver, will we be there in a minute?

D: Yes, it's not far off now ... O.K., here we are at the front of the station.

B: Let me off somewhere around here please.

B: Keep the change.

D: Thank you.

### Conversation 5A

A: When's your birthday, John?

J: It's next week, actually.

A: Is that so? My birthday's next week too, you know.

J: Eh? What day next week is it?

A: Tuesday, Tuesday the 17th.

J: Eh? Mine is on the 20th.

A: What year were you born in, John? I was born in (19)60.

J: Me too!



### Conversation 5B

- B: Two 70-yen stamps and four postcards, please. And this letter to France, please.  
X: Airmail or seairmail?  
B: By air please. Oh, and one aerogramme, please.  
X: Will that be all?  
B: Yes, that's all.  
X: That'll be 700 yen altogether. That's exactly 700 that you've given me. Thank you very much.

### Conversation 5C

- B: What time is the next train for Kyoto?  
X: Ten past nine. You have fifteen minutes.  
B: O.K. then, two adults to Kyoto, please.  
X: Single or return?  
B: Return. How much is it?  
X: 9,000 yen. That's 10,000 yen you've given me. Here's your 1,000 yen change. Thank you very much.  
B: What platform is it?  
X: It's platform 5.  
C: May I see your tickets, please? ... This isn't the train for Kyoto, you know, this is the Nagoya train.  
B: Oh, what shall we do? We've got on the wrong train.

### Conversation 6A

- A: Your Japanese is good, isn't it?  
B: No, it isn't really. I've got a long way to go.  
A: No, really. Your accent is very nice. It's no different from a Japanese person's. You really speak well, you know.  
B: Do I? Thank you.  
A: Is it difficult, Japanese?  
B: Yes, it's very difficult. I've suffered a lot! The accent is fairly easy, but the grammar is tricky. And writing and reading are a great problem. There's katakana and hiragana and kanji too. It's extremely difficult to remember.  
A: Yes, you're right there. It's a question of memory. Good for you, anyway!

### Conversation 6B

- S: Makunouchi, mackerel sushi, eel and rice, tea, beer.  
T: Two makunouchis please.  
S: Two makunouchis, here you are. Anything to drink?  
T: I'd like something cold. A beer please. What about you, Mr Brown?  
B: I'll have a hot cup of tea, please.  
S: Here you are, that'll be 1,200 yen. That's exactly 2,000 yen you've given me. Thank you.  
T: Mr Brown, is this the first time you've had a packed lunch?  
B: Yes, it is actually. But it looks delicious, doesn't it? What sort of things has it got in it?  
T: First you've got rice. And this yellowish thing here is takuwan, a pickle(d radish).  
B: There are all sorts of things, aren't there? What about this red one?  
T: Umm, that's a shrimp. It's not really red, they've just dyed it red. Anyway, let's eat. Itadakimasu!  
B: Itadakimasu! This long thin thing is deep-fried prawn, isn't it? It's tasty. You put this sauce on top, do you?  
T: That's right. It's a bit hot (spicy) ... Also, this blackish one is seaweed. It has an interesting taste.  
B: I'm full up! I've eaten too much. But it was delicious.  
T: Try this. It's sour plum. It's very sour, but it's excellent for indigestion!

### Conversation 7A

- A: Excuse me, would you be kind enough to tell me how to use the phone?  
B: (You want to know) how to use it? Certainly. Have you got a lot of 10-yen coins?  
A: Umm, I haven't got much change. I'm sorry, but would you mind changing this for me?  
B: Certainly. O.K. then, so first you pick up the receiver, and put in about three 10-yen coins, and then you dial the number. Do you see?  
A: Yes, thanks. So, umm, first you pick up the receiver, stick in about three 10-yen coins, dial the number - 06 678 9809 - and that's it, isn't it?  
B: That's right.  
A: Thank you very much indeed.

- B: Not at all, the pleasure is mine.  
A: Oh, as I thought, they're engaged. I'll wait a little and then try phoning again.

### Conversation 7B

- Mrs K: Hello?  
B: I'm sorry to be ringing late at night, but is that the Katayamas' residence?  
Mrs K: Yes it is.  
B: Is Kunio there?  
Mrs K: Yes, just a sec. I'll go and get him.  
B: Thank you.  
K: Hello, Kunio here.  
B: Kunio? It's John here.  
K: Ah, John. I've not seen you for a long time. How have you been?  
B: Very well, thank you. And you, Kunio?  
K: Yes, I've been well too.  
B: Anyway, Kunio, are you free the day after tomorrow?  
K: The day after tomorrow is Saturday, isn't it? Yes, I'm free.  
B: Well, would you like to come to Kyoto with me?  
K: I haven't been to Kyoto for ages. That's a good idea. Yes, let's go together.  
B: That's good. Where shall we go in Kyoto?  
K: Let's first decide on the time and place to meet.  
B: You're right.  
K: Let's meet at the main entrance to Osaka station at about 8 and take the 8.30.  
B: Fair enough.  
K: O.K. then, so I'll see you at 8 o'clock in the morning the day after tomorrow.  
B: Yes, I'm looking forward to it.

### Conversation 8A

- B: Excuse me, I'm looking for a bank. Isn't there one near here?  
P: I'm not familiar with this area, actually. Try asking that policeman over there.  
B: Thank you. I wonder if you could help me, I'm looking for a bank.  
K: There is a Dai Ichi Kangin Bank over there but it's closed now. Banks in Japan are open from 9 a.m. to 3 p.m., you know.  
B: I see. What shall I do? That's a nuisance, isn't it?  
K: Your Japanese is good. Where do you come from?  
B: Canada.  
K: How long have you been in Japan?  
B: Umm, for about four months.  
K: Let me have a look at your Alien Registration card.  
B: Just a sec. It's in my bag. Ah, I've got it. There you are.  
K: Oh, you're a student, aren't you?  
B: I've been studying at Hitotsubashi University for a month.  
K: I see. And you live in Kunitachi?  
B: Yes. I'm living in a dormitory at the moment but I'm looking for an apartment.  
K: I see. Yes, that's fine.

### Conversation 8B

- B: What's on TV?  
I: I'll have a look and see. Documentaries and quizzes. Uninteresting programmes, the lot of them.  
B: There's no film on, is there?  
I: Umm, just a sec. No, there isn't. Oh, there is a period play on, though.  
B: I'm not really interested.  
I: Kurosawa's '7 Samurai' is on at the cinema, though. Do you know it?  
B: I only know the name. Who's in it?  
I: I don't remember. Mifune, isn't it?  
B: Really? So then, what'll we do? Shall we go and see it?  
I: Straight away, without eating?  
B: Yes, let's go. And then after the film let's go and have something nice to eat somewhere!

### Conversation 9A

- B: Hello, is this the Inoues' house?  
I: Yes, it is. Are you Mr Brown?  
B: Yes, that's right.  
I: We've been expecting you. Kunio should be back in a minute, so do come on in.  
B: Thank you. I expect he's late with his sports club or something, isn't he?  
I: Yes, that's right. I am sorry, Mr Brown ... Do come this way. Shall I bring you something cool to drink?  
B: Yes, please.  
I: It's only wheat-tea, but here you are.  
B: Thank you. It's nice and cold.  
I: How much longer are you planning to be in Japan?  
B: I'm not quite sure. I may be here for another year, but it depends on the money.  
I: Are you studying something?  
B: Yes, modern history.  
I: Really? Why did you begin to get interested in Japan?  
B: Umm, the reason I became interested in Japan is a bit complex, but it was probably because of my father's influence.

### Conversation 9B

- K: Hello.  
I: Hello. Your guest is here.  
K: Mr Brown, I'm sorry I'm late. Wait just a bit longer, I'm going to go and get changed. Mum, where's Dad?  
I: He's not back yet. Go and get dressed quickly! ... Mr Brown, how many brothers and sisters have you got?  
B: Two, I'm the second son.  
I: All boys, is it?  
B: Yes, that's right. I've got one big brother and one younger brother.  
I: Oh, really? What does your elder brother do?  
B: Both of my brothers work for an airline company. Both may come to Japan next year.  
I: Well! That's something to look forward to. Your parents'll be coming to Japan at some stage?  
B: I wonder. My father might but my mother is unlikely to. She's afraid of flying.

K: I'm sorry to have kept you waiting. What have you been talking about?

I: We were talking about Mr Brown's family.

### Conversation 10A

- A: It's Mr Brown's birthday the day after tomorrow, isn't it? Shall we buy him a present?  
T: Yes. I wonder what'd be good.  
A: Something Japanese'd be good, don't you think? A fan or a furoshiki or something like that.  
T: Yes. A school friend of mine is working at Mitsukoshi so I'll get her to look for something nice. That's an expensive place for everything, but maybe she'll give us a small discount!

### Conversation 10B

- K: Let's drink a toast to Mr Brown! Cheers!  
M: Cheers! Cheers!  
K: Happy birthday!  
M: Happy birthday!  
K: Mr Brown, a speech, if you please!  
B: A speech? O.K. Thank you very much, everyone, for coming today. It's the first time I've had such a splendid party. Thank you so much for making this splendid meal for me. And thank you, too, for the presents.  
K: What presents did you get?  
B: I got a fan, a furoshiki and a book. I got the fan from Chieko, and the furoshiki from Yumiko and Kunio. The Inoues kindly gave me the book.  
K: By the way, how old are you today?  
B: That's a secret!

### Conversation 11A

- I: Excuse me (is anyone there?).  
R: Hello.  
I: Excuse me, do you have any rooms?  
R: There are two of you, aren't there? Yes, we do. Just one night is it?  
I: Yes.  
R: Do come in, and I'll take you to your rooms.  
I: Mr Brown, do you know what this is called?  
B: I don't remember.



- I: It's called a kotatsu. There's a heater underneath. It's lovely and warm. Do sit down and stretch your legs.
- B: Mr Inoue, do you call this door a fusuma or a shoji? I've forgotten again which is which.
- I: It's a fusuma actually. But the most interesting thing in a Japanese-style room is behind you. It's a place called the tokonoma (alcove). You place flowers and kakejiku there.
- B: It's really splendid. Kakejiku means scroll, doesn't it?
- I: That's right, but I've got no idea what's written on that scroll. The characters are so old it's very difficult for me to read!
- R: Excuse me (I've brought the tea).

### Conversation 11B

- B: I'm sorry I'm late. I thought I knew the place but in fact I didn't, so I got a policeman to tell me (the way).
- M: I'm sorry.
- B: Not at all. It's a rather good place, this, isn't it? What about Mr Inoue? He said he'd be coming, didn't he?
- M: Umm, I expect he'll be here in a minute as it's gone 9 o'clock.
- B: What about Mr Yamamoto?
- M: Mr Yamamoto's mother went into hospital yesterday so I think it's a little unlikely he'll come.
- B: That's terrible. What about Mr Katayama?
- M: He said he'd be late because of business at the office. I'm not sure if he'll finally turn up or not!
- B: Really? I told Mr Smith to come along today but he too said it was impossible!
- M: What a pity! Let's drink together then, just the three of us! Excuse me! Some beer, please!

### Conversation 12A

- A: Mr Brown, do you have any likes and dislikes?
- B: Umm ... There aren't many things I don't like, actually. Only natto and manju. Apart from that I don't think there is anything particular I dislike.
- A: Sashimi and sushi are all right, are they?
- B: Sashimi and sushi are favourites of mine. At first I wasn't too keen (*lit.* there was some resistance to them) but now I like them a lot.
- A: What about Japanese (rice) wine? I heard that all foreigners like it.
- B: I wonder, I may be the exception, but I'm not too fond of rice wine!

### Conversation 12B

- A: I expect you're good at sports aren't you, Mr Brown?
- B: Umm, I'm quite good at rugby, but apart from that I can't do much. What about you, Mr Amai, is there a sport you're good at?
- A: Baseball and softball. That's about it.
- B: Baseball is very popular in Japan, isn't it? I didn't know it was so popular. There can't be many Japanese who are bad at baseball, can there?
- A: Maybe you're right. Everybody plays it from when they're children, you see. Mr Brown, would you like to go and see a baseball match?
- A: Yes, I'd really like to.
- B: Who do you support?
- A: Me, I like the Giants. What about you?
- B: Me, I like the Hanshin Tigers!

### Conversation 13A

- A: I wonder how today's weather will turn out?
- B: According to the weather forecast it's going to be clear, but somehow it doesn't look that way, does it?
- A: Yes. It looks as though it's going to rain so I expect the picnic will be off, won't it? It looks as if it's started to rain already.
- B: It's spitting, it seems. That's a nuisance. But it is clear over in the west, so I get the feeling it may clear up later.

### Conversation 13B

- A: Have you seen the news this morning?  
B: Not yet. Why?  
A: According to the news there was a big earthquake in Tokyo. It was magnitude 5, it seems. That's big, isn't it?  
B: Magnitude 5 is big. What about injuries?  
A: I don't remember how many injured there are, but quite a few people died. Earthquakes are frightening, aren't they?  
B: They are. It's lucky it wasn't a big one like the one in 1923.  
A: Of course, but on the news they said be careful as there may be another earthquake soon.

### Conversation 14A

- A: Good morning everybody! Today's guest is Mr John Brown from England. Mr Brown, what were your motives for coming to Japan? To study Japanese, I suppose?  
B: Umm, yes. I had quite a few motives in wanting to come to Japan, but I suppose it was because I wanted to improve my speaking and listening ability.  
A: I see. Next, apart from studying Japanese, what is it that you want to do most of all in Japan?  
B: There are many things I want to do, but I want to fit into Japanese society and make lots of friends.  
A: Next and last of all, what is the place you most want to visit?  
B: Umm, I want to go somewhere where foreigners don't go much. I want to visit for example a place which has an interesting history, like the Goto Islands.  
A: Really? Thank you very much.

### Conversation 14B

- B: Which parts of Kyoto shall we go to?  
I: Umm, which'd be good, a temple with a garden or somewhere where the buildings are interesting? There's everything in Kyoto, you know!  
B: I'd like to have a look and see a Zen-influenced garden.  
I: O.K. then, let's go first to the temple called Ryoanji. Ryoanji is a very interesting place. There are always lots of people, but I think that it's definitely worth seeing. Ryoanji is a typical garden which expresses the influence of Zen thought. It's a peculiarly Japanese sort of place.

The garden is one with only white pebbles and rocks.

- B: That sounds interesting. It sounds quite different to what we'd call a garden in the West!

### Conversation 15A

- I: Have you experienced a culture shock in Japan?  
B: Umm, it doesn't amount to a culture shock as such, but it took time to get used to all sorts of things.  
I: Do you mean food, language, etc.?  
B: Yes, and wherever you look it's all kanji, so at first I felt as though I was blind.  
I: I bet you did. There were a few things you mustn't do and things you may do in everyday life, weren't there?  
B: Yes, just a few. For example, you mustn't wear shoes inside the house. And the way of sitting is different too. It sometimes happens that you'll sit for hours cross-legged, doesn't it? That takes time to get used to!  
I: Bathing is very different too, isn't it? You mustn't use soap in the bath, must you? And you mustn't pull the plug out either, must you? Because everyone else has to get in afterwards, haven't they?

### Conversation 15B

- B: Mr Inoue, have you ever been to Kamikochi?  
I: Not yet, no. It sometimes happens that I go to Nagano on business, but I've never been as far as Kamikochi. Why?  
B: I've arranged to go there next week with a friend of mine.  
I: It's probably just the right time for seeing Kamikochi. They say it's lovely and cool even in August.  
B: You can come with us, Mr Inoue.  
I: No, I can't. I'm so busy at the office that I won't be able to take a holiday this year.

### Conversation 16A

- B: Do you know which has the bigger area, Great Britain or Japan? Is Britain a bit bigger?  
I: No, Britain isn't as big as Japan.  
B: Oh, really. But as for the population though, Japan has a much larger one, doesn't it?  
I: Oh, yes. It's probably more than twice the size of Britain's, isn't it? And, almost all of Japan is mountain(ous) so there isn't that much space where people can live.



- B: Yes, the population density is very high, isn't it?  
 I: In Britain, there aren't any real mountains, I've heard. Is that right?  
 B: Not really. There may not be any as high as Mt. Fuji, but in Wales and Scotland there are a good number of mountains.  
 I: Really? And then the climate is very different, isn't it? In Japan the four seasons are clearly defined but in Britain I hear there are winter-like days even in summer.  
 B: You're right. But in Britain there isn't a rainy season, and there are no typhoons.  
 I: You're lucky (*lit.* I'm envious). Britain is safer, it seems!  
 B: Yes, there are no volcanoes and no earthquakes.

#### Conversation 16B

- I: What's the matter?  
 B: My stomach is unbearably painful.  
 I: That's no good, is it? Since when?  
 B: Since about three days ago.  
 I: O.K. then, take off your shirt and lie down over there. Mmm, I'd better take an X-ray.  
 I: You've got gastroenteritis. There's no need to worry. For a while you ought to keep away from cigarettes and alcohol.  
 B: May I eat normally?  
 I: You shouldn't eat too much. And you should refrain from hot spicy things. I'll give you some medicine. Take it before meals.  
 B: Thank you.  
 I: Take care.

#### Conversation 17A

- I: John, dinner is ready. Eat it before it gets cold.  
 B: Itadakimasu.  
 I: John, there's not long now before you go back home, is there? Before you leave Japan are there any other things you want to do or places you want to see?  
 B: There are. The other day when I passed Mt. Fuji on the bullet train, I thought I'd really like to try climbing it sometime.  
 I: Really? That's a good idea.

- B: Have you ever climbed it?  
 I: When I was younger I climbed it just once.  
 B: What was it like?  
 I: The feeling on reaching the top is great, but it's hard work while you're climbing, you know.  
 B: I bet it is. Mmm, before I go back I'd love to try climbing it ... Thank you for the meal.  
 Mrs I: A pleasure.

#### Conversation 17B

- S: Today let's practise *mae, ato, toki, to*, O.K.? First, let's try making sentences using *mae*. Yes, Tom, go ahead. Anything'll do.  
 T: Umm, 'Before I came to Japan, I couldn't speak Japanese, but now I can a little.'  
 S: Good. Next, try making a sentence using *ato*.  
 J: 'After lectures finish I'm going to a bar with friends and after that I'm going to another bar.'  
 S: That's fine. Next is *toki*.  
 M: 'The other day when I went to a bar, I drank alcohol and sang songs.'  
 S: Good.  
 T: Can I do another one?  
 S: Yes, go on.  
 T: 'Just as I was about to go out of the door, I got a call from Mary.'  
 S: That's a very good sentence. Lastly *to*. Yes, John!  
 J: 'I always go for a drink when lectures finish. And I always come back drunk when I go out for a drink.'  
 S: That's fine.

#### Conversation 18A

- B: Mr Inoue, I've been in Japan for three months now but I get the feeling my Japanese hasn't progressed at all.  
 I: It's not true that it hasn't progressed. But in another two or three months, it'll get much better, I'm sure.  
 B: But what do you think I should do to get better much sooner?  
 I: Umm, if it's a question of vocabulary, why don't you listen to the news every day, and take down the words you don't know? If you do that, the number of words will grow, won't it?



- B: But I wonder what I should do to be able to speak much more fluently.  
 I: That's a question of time.  
 B: I should have studied more before coming to Japan!

### Conversation 18B

- B: If we'd gone by taxi, we might have been there by now.  
 I: We'll soon get there.  
 B: Shouldn't we have got him to write us a map?  
 I: No, we don't need a map. This is Aoyamadori, O.K.? I think if we go straight down here and turn left at the third set of lights, it should be 2 *ban*.  
 B: Really? But why don't we try asking someone?  
 I: No need for that. It's close by here.
- B: Shouldn't we have taken the second turning on the left?  
 I: Maybe. Let's take a taxi if we don't find it in another five minutes.  
 B: If there is one!  
 I: Take us to Aoyama 1 *chome*, 2 *ban*, 6 *go* please.

### Conversation 19A

- B: Good morning.  
 I: Morning. What's the matter, Mr Brown? It looks like another hangover, is it?  
 B: That's right. I was taken to a karaoke bar last night by some friends.  
 I: I bet that was fun, wasn't it? The karaoke, I mean?  
 B: Umm, I said I didn't want to sing, but I was made to. However much I said I was tone deaf, they said they wanted to hear an English song, and I thought I'd be told off if I didn't sing so I sang 'Greensleeves'.  
 I: I bet that went down well.  
 B: It seems to have done. But it was awful, being made to drink even though I didn't want to.  
 I: John, you've got to get a bit stronger!

### Conversation 19B

- B: Why are you crying?  
 Y: My father has said that he won't let me go and study abroad.  
 B: Why have you suddenly been told that it's no good?

- Y: My father intends to make me do hanayome shugyo as soon as I've finished school.  
 B: What's hanayome shugyo?  
 Y: It's preparing for marriage, by learning the tea-ceremony, flower arranging, and cooking.  
 B: Preparation for marriage? But have you got a fiancé (*lit.* partner)?  
 Y: No, I'm going to be made to have an arranged marriage.  
 B: An arranged marriage? What are you going to do?  
 Y: I suppose I'll have to do as I'm told!

### Conversation 20A

- A: Why don't you try these on?  
 B: These?! You must be joking, I don't want these!  
 A: Why? They're nice.  
 B: They're not my cup of tea. What about these?  
 A: They're nice. Are you going to try them on?  
 B: Mmm, I will.
- B: They're a bit long, aren't they?  
 A: Not really. They're just right, I think.  
 B: O.K. I'll have them. Excuse me, can I have these please?  
 X: Yes, that's 4,000 yen.  
 B: Great. Shall we go and have a cup of tea?

### Conversation 20B

- A: Is Mr Yoshida there?  
 B: Who is speaking?  
 A: My name's Tanaka.  
 B: Just a moment ... He's not at his desk at the moment.  
 A: I see. Can I leave a message?  
 B: Yes, do.  
 A: I shall call on him tomorrow at eleven. Would you tell him that, please?  
 B: Certainly, I'll pass that on to him.

# Mini-dictionary

## English-Japanese

Verbs are given in both plain and *masu* forms. Numbers refer to chapter, but where we give a chapter number immediately followed by n. and another number the latter identifies a particular note in that chapter's conversation piece.

**ability** chikara  
**able to** dekiru/dekimasu; 15  
**about** goro, gurai; 5, 8  
**about (regarding)** ni tsuite  
**abroad** kaigai (e)  
**accent** hatsuon  
**accident (have an)** jiko (ni au/aimasu)  
**according to** ni yoru to ... sō desu; 13n.1  
**advertisement** kōkoku  
**afraid** kowai  
**after(wards)** -te kara; 7, ato ni/de; 17  
**afternoon** gogo  
**again** mata  
**ages, I haven't seen you for** (o)hisashiburi desu  
**ago** mae; 8  
**airmail** kōkūbin  
**airport** kūkō  
**alcohol** arukōru  
**alcoholic drink** o-sake  
**alien registration card** gaikokujin tōrokushōmeishō  
**alive, be** ikiru/ikimasu; 8  
**all** zenbu  
**all (everyone)** mi(n)na  
**all right** ii  
**alone** hitori de  
**along, go** o iku/ikimasu; 4  
**already** mō; 3

**also** mo  
**although** no ni, ga; 4, 9  
**altogether** zenbu de  
**always** itsumo; 14  
**a.m.** gozen  
**ambulance** kyūkyūsha  
**amount** ryō  
**amusing** omoshiroi  
**and then, so** sore kara, soshite; 4, 7, 9  
**anybody, 14**  
**anyone, 14**  
**anything, 14**  
**anywhere, 14**  
**apartment** apāto  
**apologize** ayamaru/ayamarimasu  
**appear, 13**  
**April** shigatsu  
**argue** kenka suru/shimasu  
**arrest** taiho suru/shimasu  
**arrive** tōchaku suru/shimasu, tsuku/tsukimasu  
**article** kiji  
**as ... as** hodo gurai; 16  
**as soon/far/long as ... , 17**  
**ask** kiku/kikimasu; 11  
**ask (for)** tanomu/tanomimasu; 11  
**asleep, be** nete iru/imasu; 7  
**at** ni,de; 3, 4  
**attach** *vt.* tsukeru/tsukemasu  
**August** hachigatsu  
**aunt** oba(-san); 9

**autumn** aki  
**awful** hidoi

**back** ushiro  
**back, come** kaette kuru/kimasu  
**bad** warui  
**bad at** heta; 12  
**bag** kaban  
**baggage** nimotsu  
**bang** *vt.* batan to shimeru/shimemasu; 6  
**bank** ginkō  
**bank account** kōza  
**bar** bā  
**baseball** yakyū  
**bath** *n.* (o-)furo  
**bath** *vt.* (o)furo ni hairu/hairimasu  
**be** da/desu, aru/arimasu, iru/imasu, irassharu/irasshaimasu, oru/orimasu; 2, 3, 20  
**be (on TV)** ni deru/demasu  
**beautiful** utsukushii  
**because** no de, kara; 9  
**become** naru/narimasu; 6, 12  
**bed, go** to neru/nemasu  
**beer** bīru  
**before** mae; 5, 17  
**begin (to)** hajimeru/hajimemasu  
**behind** ushiro  
**beside** soba, tonari  
**best** ichiban ii; 16  
**better, 16**  
**between** no aida (ni); 17  
**beyond** mukō  
**big** ōkii, ōki na; 6  
**bike** ōtobai  
**birthday** tanjōbi  
**bit** sukoshi, chotto; 5  
**black** kuroi  
**blow up** *vi.* bakuhatsu suru/shimasu  
**blue** aoi  
**board** ni noru/norimasu  
**boil** *vi.* waku/wakimasu

**boil** *vt.* wakasu/wakashimasu  
**bomb** *n.* bakudan  
**book(shop)** honya(-san)  
**boring** tsumaranai  
**born, be** umareru/umaremasu  
**borrow** kariru/karimasu  
**boss** bosu  
**both** mo ... mo, ryōhō; 2, 14, 16  
**bottle** bin  
**bottle (counter)** hon; 5  
**bottom** shita  
**box** hako  
**boy** otoko no ko  
**boyfriend** bōifurendo  
**bread** pan  
**break** *vt.* kowasu/kowashimasu  
**break down** koshō suru/shimasu  
**breakfast** chōshoku, asagohan  
**bring** motte kuru/kimasu, tsurete kuru/kimasu; 7  
**brother** otōto, ani, o-nī-san; 9  
**brothers** (go-)kyōdai; 9  
**brown** chairō (no); 3  
**browse** tachiyomi suru/shimasu  
**building** biru, tatemono  
**bullet train** shinkansen  
**bump into** ni deau/deaimasu  
**burglar** dorobō  
**bus(stop)** basu(tei)  
**business, on** shigoto de  
**businessman** kaishain, sararīman  
**busy** isogashii  
**but** ga, no ni, keredo(mo) shikashi; 4, 9  
**buy** kau/kaimasu  
**by** de, ni, ni yotte; 3, 4, 19  
**by (four o'clock)** made ni

**call (denwa o)** kakeru/kakemasu, yobu/yobimasu  
**called, 11**  
**calligraphy** shodō  
**camera** kamera  
**can** koto ga dekiru/dekimasu; 15  
**can do** dekiru/dekimasu; 12  
**capital** shuto



car kuruma  
card kâdo  
cards (playing) toranpu  
care kamau/kamaimasu; 15  
careful, be chūi suru/shimasu  
cartoon manga  
catch (a train) ni noru/norimasu  
catch cold kaze o hiku/hikimasu  
cause, 19  
certainly mochiron  
chair isu  
change *n.* o-kaeshi, o-tsuri,  
komakai o-kane  
change *vt.* kaeru/kaemasu  
change *vi.* kawaru/kawarimasu  
changed, get kigaeru/kigaemasu  
character (Chinese) kanji  
cheap yasui  
cheaply yasuku  
cheapo yasuppoi  
check shiraberu/shirabemasu  
child(ren) kodomo  
China Chūgoku  
Chinese *adj.* Chūgoku no  
Chinese (language) Chūgokugo  
Chinese (person) Chūgokujin  
chips furaido poteto  
choose erabu/erabimasu  
chopstick hashi  
church kyōkai  
cigarette tabako  
cinema eigakan  
class(room) kyōshitsu  
clean *adj.* kirei (na)  
clean *vt.* sōji suru/shimasu  
cleanly kirei ni  
clean up  
katazakeru/katazukemasu  
clearly hakkiri (to)  
clever atama ga ii, kashikoi  
climate kikō  
climb noboru/noborimasu  
close *vt.* shimeru/shimemasu  
close *vi.* shimeru/shimarimasu  
closed, be shimatte iru/imasu; 8  
coat *n.* kōto

coffee kōhī  
coffee shop kissaten  
coin kika, dama  
coke kōra  
cold *n.* kaze  
cold (to the touch) tsumetai  
cold (weather) samui  
collect *vt.* atsumeru/atsumemasu  
collect *vi.*  
atsumaru/atsumarimasu  
collide shōtotsu suru/shimasu  
come kuru/kimasu,  
mairu/mairimasu,  
irassharu/irasshaimasu; 20  
come back kaette kuru/kimasu; 7  
come in hairu/hairimasu, haitte  
kuru/kimasu,  
agaru/agarimasu  
come off toreru/toremasu  
come out deru/demasu; 8  
come round asobi ni  
kuru/kimasu  
comic manga  
company kaisha  
complete, be dekite iru/imasu  
completely kanzen ni  
concert konsāto  
continue *vt.*  
tsuzukeru/tsuzukemasu  
continue *vi.*  
tsuzuku/tsuzukimasu  
convey tsutaeru/tsutaemasu  
cooking ryōri  
cool (weather) suzushii  
cool tsumetai  
corner kado  
correct naosu/naoshimasu  
cost *n.* nedan  
cost (of living) bukka  
cost *vi.* kakaru/kakarimasu  
country (nation) kuni  
country(side) inaka  
crash (cars) shōtotsu  
suru/shimasu  
crash (planes) tsuiraku  
suru/shimasu

crazy kichigai (na)  
cross (over) (o)  
wataru/watarimasu; 4  
cross, be okotte iru/imasu  
cross-legged, sit agura o  
kaku/kakimasu  
crowded, be konde iru/imasu; 8  
cry naku/nakimasu  
cup koppu  
cup (counter) hai; 5  
cut *vt.* kiru/kirimasu

danger kiken  
dangerous abunai, kiken na  
date hizuke; 5  
date, what's the nannichi  
daughter musume(-san); 9  
day hi  
day after tomorrow asatte  
day before yesterday ototsui,  
ototoi  
dead shinde iru/imasu  
December jūnigatsu  
decide koto ni suru/shimasu; 15  
decide kimeru/kimemasu  
definitely zettai ni  
delicious oishii  
density mitsudo  
depart dekakeru/dekakemasu  
department (academic) gakubu  
department store depāto  
desire(d) hoshii; 12  
dialect ben  
dictionary jisho  
die shinu/shinimasu  
difficult muzukashii  
difficult to -nikui; 6n.5  
disappear, 12  
dishy suteki (na)  
dislike(d) kirai; 12  
do yaru, yarimasu, suru/  
shimasu, itasu/itashimasu,  
nasaru/nasaimasu,  
tsukuru/tsukurimasu; 10, 20  
doctor (o-)isha(san)  
documentary dokyumentarī

door doa  
down shita  
drawer hikidashi  
dress doresu  
dressed, get kigaeru/kigaemasu  
drink *vt.* nomu/nomimasu,  
itadaku/itadakimasu,  
meshigaru, meshiagarimasu; 20  
drink *n.* nomimono  
drunk, be yo(ppara)tte iru/  
imasu  
due to hazu, 9  
during ... no aida; 17

early *adj.* hayai  
early *adv.* hayaku  
earthquake jishin  
easy yasashii, kantan (na)  
easy to -yasui; 6n.5  
eat taberu/tabemasu,  
meshiagaru/meshiagarimasu,  
itadaku/itadakimasu; 20  
eat out gaishoku suru/shimasu  
either mo ... mo, dochiraka; 2, 14  
embarrassed, be hazukashii  
empty, be suite iru/imasu; 8, 19  
end (of street) tsukiatari  
England Igrisu, Eikoku  
English (language) Eigo  
English (person) Igrisujin,  
Eikokujin  
enough jūbun  
enter hairu/hairimasu; 8  
entry, no shinnyūkinshi  
escape nigeru/nigemasu  
even if -te mo; 19n.2  
evening yūgata, ban  
ever, 15  
every day mainichi  
every month maittsuki  
every week maishū  
every year mainen, maitoshi  
everyone, 14  
everything, 14  
everywhere, 14  
example, for tatoeba



excuse (me) shitsurei  
suru/shimasu, sumimasen,  
gomen nasai  
exit deguchi  
expected to hazu; 9  
expensive takai  
experience *n.* keiken  
experience *vt.* keiken suru/  
shimasu  
explain setsumeï suru/shimasu  
explanation setsumeï  
extremely hijō ni  
eye me  
  
face kao  
fact, in jitsu wa  
the fact is that *n'* (no) desu; 9  
fall down ochiru/ochimasu  
fall over korobu/korobimasu,  
taoreru/taoremasu  
family kazoku  
famous yūmei (na)  
far tōi  
fast hayai  
father chichi, o-tō-san; 9  
favourite ichiban suki (na)  
February nigatsu  
feel (like) 13  
few sukunai  
film fuirumu  
film (movie) eiga  
fine kekkō (na)  
fingerprint shimon  
finish saigo  
finish *vt., vi.* owaru/owarimasu  
fish (shop) sakana (ya-san)  
flood kōzui  
floor yuka  
floor (counter) kai; 5  
flower hana  
flower arranging ikebana  
fluent ryūchō (na), perapera (na)  
fluently ryūchō ni  
fly tobu/tobimasu  
fond of suki (na); 12  
food tabemono

foot, on aruite; 7  
foot ashi  
for ni  
for (time), 8  
foreign gaikoku no  
foreigner gai(koku)jin  
forget wasureru/wasuremasu  
free (no charge) tada  
free (time) hima (na)  
French (language) Furansugo  
fresh shinsen (na)  
Friday kinyōbi  
fridge reizōko  
friend tomodachi  
from kara  
front mae  
full ippai (na)  
fun *n.* tanoshimi  
fun *adj.* tanoshii  
funny omoshiroi, okashii  
  
garden niwa, teien  
German (language) Doitsugo  
get (become) naru/narimasu; 6  
get (call) yobu/yobimasu  
get (receive) morau/moraimasu,  
itadaku/itadakimasu; 10  
get someone to do, 10  
get up okiru/okimasu  
get used to nareru/naremasu  
girl onna no ko  
girlfriend gārufurendo  
give, 10  
give up akirameru/akiramemasu  
given, be, 10  
glass koppu  
glass (counter) hai  
go iku/ikimasu,  
irassharu/irasshaimasu,  
mairu/mairimasu; 20  
go home kaeru/kaerimasu  
go in hairu/hairimasu; 8  
go off (bomb) bakuhatsu  
suru/shimasu  
go out deru/demasu,  
dekakeru/dekakemasu

go out for a drink nomi ni  
iku/ikimasu  
go out with to  
tsukiau/tsukiaimasu  
good ii, yoroshii; 4n.6  
good at jōzu (na), umai; 12  
good many, 14  
grandfather, 9  
grandmother, 9  
great ōkii  
green midori-iro (no)  
guest (o-)kyaku(-sama)  
guide *vi.* annai suru/shimasu  
guitar gitā

hair kami no ke  
half past han  
hamburger hanbāgā  
hand te  
hand over watasu/watashimasu  
hang *vt.* kakeru/kakemasu  
hangover futsukayoi  
hard *adv.* katai  
hard to *adj.* -nikui  
hard *adv.* yoku  
hat bōshi  
haunt tamariba  
have (got) aru/arimasu, motte  
iru/imasu; 3, 8  
have someone do, 10  
have to, 15  
he kare  
head atama  
headache zutsū  
hear kiku/kikimasu  
heart kokoro  
heart, learn by anki  
suru/shimasu  
heater hīta  
hello konnichi wa  
help (someone) (o)  
tasukeru/tasukemasu, (ni)  
tetsudau/tetsudaimasu  
her kanojo (no)  
here koko  
high takai

high school kōkō  
him kare  
his kare no  
hobby shumi  
holiday yasumi  
holiday, go on ryokō suru/  
shimasu  
holiday, take a yasumi o  
toru/torimasu  
home (o-)uchi  
home, go kaeru/kaerimasu  
hope, 18  
hot atsui  
hot (spicy) karai  
hotel hoteru  
hour ji, jikan; 5, 8  
house ie, (o-)taku  
housewife shufu  
how dō yatte  
how (*plus adj.*) dore  
dake/hodo/gurai; 16  
how about, 3  
how long, 8  
how much, 5, 16  
how old (o-)jikutsu, nansai  
humid mushiatsui  
hungry, be onaka ga suite  
iru/imasu; 8  
hurry isogu/isogimasu; 7  
hurry, be in a isoide iru/imasu  
husband (go-)shujin,  
danna-san; 9  
  
I watashi, ore, boku; 20  
if moshi; 18  
ill byōki (na)  
immediately (ima) sugu  
important jūyō (na), taisetsu (na),  
daiji (na)  
impression, 13  
in (no naka) ni; 2, 5  
injure kizu o tsukeru/tsukemasu  
injury kizu  
in(side), be (no naka ni) haitte  
iru/imasu; 8  
instant insutanto (no)

instead -naide, -nakute; 7  
intend to tsumori; 9  
interest kyōmi  
interesting omoshiroi  
interpret tsūyaku suru/shimasu  
interrupt kuchi o dasu/dashimasu  
invite yobu/yobimasu, shōtai  
suru/shimasu  
it, 2

January ichigatsu  
Japan Nihon, Nippon  
Japanese (language) Nihongo  
Japanese (person) Nihonjin  
jazz jazu  
joke jōdan  
July shichigatsu  
jumper sēta  
June rokugatsu  
just chōdo, dake  
just like to onaji yō na/ni; 13  
just right chōdo ii

kidnap yūkai suru/shimasu  
kind yasashii, shinsetsu (na)  
kind enough to, 7  
know shitte iru/imasu; 8, gozonji,  
zonjiru/zonjimasu; 20  
know, get to shiru/shirimasu; 7  
Korea Kankoku  
Korean (language) Kankokugo  
Korean (person) Kankokujin

lacquerware shikki  
lady oba-san; 9  
language kotoba  
language, foreign gaikokugo  
large ōkii, ōi  
last *vi.* tsuzuku/tsuzukimasu  
last *adj.* saigo (no)  
last month sengetsu  
last night yūbe  
last week senshū  
last year kyonen  
late osoi  
late, be okurete iru/imasu

laugh warau/waraimasu  
learn narau/naraimasu  
leave *vi.* tatsu/tachimasu,  
dekakeru/dekakemasu  
leave *vt.* yameru/yamemasu  
leave something behind  
wasuremono o suru/shimasu  
lecture jugyō  
left hidari (no)  
leg ashi  
leisurely yukkuri to  
lesson jugyō  
let, 19  
let's -mashō  
let ... off orosu/oroshimasu  
letter tegami  
lie down yoko ni naru/narimasu  
light *adj.* karui  
light *n.* denki  
like(d) suki; 12  
likes and dislikes sukikirai  
listen (to) (o) kiku/kikimasu,  
ukagau/ukagaimasu; 20  
little chūsa na, chūsa  
live sumu/sumimasu; 8  
loathe daikirai; 12  
lonely samishii  
long nagai  
loo o-tearai  
look at (o) miru/mimasu, go-ran  
ni naru/narimasu, haiken  
itatsu/itashimasu  
look for sagasu/sagashimasu  
look, have a mite miru/mimasu  
look forward to o tanoshimi ni  
suru/shimasu  
loose yurui  
lose nakusu/shimasu  
a lot (of) takusan (no)  
love *n.* ai  
love *vt.* aisuru/shimasu; 8  
low hikui  
lucky un ga ii  
lunch hirugohan  
lunchtime hiru

mad kichigai (na)  
magazine zasshi  
magnitude shindo  
main entrance chūōguchi  
make tsukuru/tsukurimasu,  
suru/shimasu  
man otoko (no hito), oji-san; 9  
many takusan (no), ōi  
March sangatsu  
marriage kekkon  
married, be kekkon shite  
iru/imasu  
marry to kekkon suru/shimasu  
match shiai  
matter, it doesn't kamaimasen; 15  
may(be) ka mo shiremasen,  
hyotto suru to; 9, 15  
May gogatsu  
me watashi  
meal shokuji, gohan  
meaning *n.* imi  
mean *vt.*, 11  
mean to tsumori; 9  
medicine kusuri  
meet (ni) au/aimasu  
meet, arrange to machiawase (o)  
suru/shimasu  
meeting kaigi  
memory kioku  
message (o-)kotozuke  
middle naka  
middle of, in the saichū; 17  
mind kamau/kamaimasu; 15  
minute fun; 5  
moment, at the ima no tokoro  
Monday getsuyōbi  
money o-kane  
month, 7, 8  
more motto; 16  
more, the ... the more, 18  
(bit) more mō (chotto)  
morning asa  
most ichiban, mottomo; 16  
mother haha, o-kā-san; 9  
motorbike ōtobai  
mountain yama

move *vi.* ugoku/ugokimasu  
move *vt.* ugokasu/ugokashimasu  
much takusan  
museum hakubutsukan  
must, 15

name (o-)namae  
name card meishi  
near chikai  
nearby chikaku ni  
necessary hitsuyō (na)  
need iru/irimasu; 12  
neither mo ... mo; 2, 14  
never, 14  
new atarashii  
news nyūsu  
newspaper shinbun  
next tsugi (no)  
next month raigetsu  
next week raishū  
next year rainen  
nice ii  
nice and ... -te ii; 7  
night yoru  
no ie  
no good dame (na)  
none, 14  
noon hiru  
no one, 14  
normal futsū (no)  
normally futsū  
not at all zenzen  
not often amari  
not very amari; 16  
not yet mada  
note nōto  
note (money) satsu  
nothing, 14  
November jūichigatsu  
now ima; 4  
nowhere, 14  
nuclear weapons kakuheiki  
nuisance, that's a  
komaru/komarimasu  
number kazu, bangō

o'clock *ji*; 5  
October *jūgatsu*  
odd *okashii*, *okashi na*  
of, 2  
off, be *kaeru/kaerimasu*,  
    *dekakeru/dekakemasu*  
office *kaisha*  
often *yoku*; 6  
O.K. (good) *ii*, *daijōbu (na)*  
O.K. (not too good) *mā mā*  
old (people) *toshiyori*  
old (things) *furui*  
on no ue *ni*  
once *ikkai*, *ichido*, *itsuka*; 5, 14  
only *shika (with negative)*, *dake*; 5  
open *vt. akeru/akemasu*,  
    *hiraku/hirakimasu*  
open *vi. aku/akimasu*  
open, be *aite iru/imasu*; 8, 19  
opinion *iken*  
opposite *n. hantai*  
opposite *adj. hantai (no)*  
or ... *ka ... ka, soreto*; 2  
orange *n. mikan*  
ordinary *futsū (no)*  
other *hoka (no)*  
ought, 9, 18  
our *watashitachi no*  
out, be *dete iru/imasu, dekakete*  
    *iru/imasu*  
outside *soto*  
over, 4  
over there (a) *soko, sochira, achira*  
own, on my *hitori de*  
  
packed lunch (o-) *bentō*  
painful *itai*  
paper *kami*  
parcel *kozutsumi*  
parent (go-) *ryōshin*; 9  
party *pātei*  
pass *vi. tōru/tōrimasu*  
passport *pasupōto*  
pay (o-kane o) *harau/haraimasu*  
pencil *enpitsu*  
people *hitobito*

perhaps *tabun, moshi ka suru to*  
period play *jidai geki*  
person *hito*  
phone (call) *n. denwa*  
phone *vt. (ni) denwa*  
    *suru/shimasu, denwa o*  
    *kakeru/kakemasu*  
photo *shashin*  
piece *mai*; 5  
place *n. basho, tokoro*  
place *vt. oku/okimasu*  
plan *yotei*; 9  
plane *hikōki*  
platform *bansen*  
play *asobu/asobimasu*  
play (e.g. rugby) *yarū/yarimasu*  
please *o-negai suru/shimasu*,  
    *kudasai*; 4  
pleased to meet you *dōzo*  
    *yoroshiku*  
pleasure, my *dō itashimashite*  
plug (bath) *sen*  
plum (sour) *umeboshi*  
p.m. *gogo*  
pocket *poketto*  
police(man) *keisatsu(kan)*  
police office *kōban*  
polite *teinei (na)*  
politician *seijika*  
popular *ninki ga aru/arimasu*  
population *jinkō*  
possibility *kanōsei*  
possible *dekiru/dekimasu*; 15  
possibly *tabun, moshi ka suru to*  
post (a letter) *tegami o*  
    *dasu/dashimasu*  
postcard *hagaki*  
post office *yūbinkyoku*  
potato, fried *furaido poteto*  
practice *renshū*  
practise *renshū suru/shimasu*  
pray *inoru/inorimasu*  
prefer *suki*; 16  
preparation *junbi, yōi*  
prepare *junbi suru/shimasu, yōi*  
    *suru/shimasu*

present *n. purezento*  
present *adj. ima (no)*  
president (company) *shachō*  
presumably *osoraku*; 9  
pretty *kirei (na)*  
price *nedan*  
prices *bukka*  
primary school pupil *shōgakusei*  
probably *darō/deshō*; 9  
problem *mondai*  
professor *sensei*  
programme *bangumi*  
pronounce *vt. hatsuon*  
    *suru/shimasu*  
pronunciation *hatsuon*  
properly *chan to*  
publish *shuppan suru/shimasu*  
pull out *nuku/nukimasu*  
pupil *seito*  
purse *saifu*  
put *oku/okimasu*  
put (in) (ni) *ireru/iremasu*

question *shitsumon*  
question (problem) *mondai*  
quick *hayai*  
quickly *hayaku*  
quiet *shizuka (na)*  
quite *kanari*  
quiz *kuizu*

radio *rajo*  
rain *n. ame*  
rain *vi. ame ga furu/furimasu*  
rainy season *tsuyū*  
raw fish (o-) *sashimi*  
reach *todoku/todokimasu*  
reach (arrive at) *tsuku/tsukimasu*,  
    *tōchaku suru/shimasu*  
read *yomu/yomimasu*  
ready (yōi ga) *dekite iru/imasu*  
real *hontō (no)*  
really *hontō (ni), sugoku*  
receive, 10  
recent *saikin (no)*  
recently *saikin*

red *akai*  
refuse *kotowaru/kotowarimasu*  
remember *oboeru/oboemasu*; 8  
reporter *kisha*  
residence *o-taku*  
rest *vi. yasumu/yasumimasu*  
return *vi. kaeru/kaerimasu*  
return *vt. kaesu/kaeshimasu*  
rice *go-han*  
right *migi*  
right, just *chōdo ii*  
ring (ni) *denwa suru/shimasu*,  
    *denwa o kakeru/kakemasu*  
road *michi, tōri*  
roof *yane, okujō*  
room *heya*  
room (space) *basho*  
roughly *itsu goro*  
round *adv., 4*  
rude *shitsurei (na)*  
rugby *ragubī*  
run *hashiru/hashirimasu*

sad *kanashii*  
safe *anzen (na), buji (na)*  
safely *anzen ni, buji ni*  
sale *bāgen sēru*  
same (as) (to) *onaji*; 6  
Saturday *doyōbi*  
sauce *sōsu*  
say *iu/iimasu, mōsu/mōshimasu*,  
    *ossharu/osshaimasu*; 11, 20  
school *gakkō*  
sea(side) *umi(be)*  
seasons, four *shiki*  
seat, take a *suwaru/suwarimasu*,  
    *kakeru/kakemasu*  
see *see look at*  
seem, 13  
sell *vt. uru/urimasu*  
sell *vi. ureru/uremasu*  
send *okuru/okurimasu*  
sensible *gōriteki (na)*  
sentence *bunshō*  
September *kugatsu*  
set off *dekakeru/dekakemasu*



shall we -mashō; 3  
 shape katachi; 13  
 she kanojo  
 shirt shatsu  
 shoe kutsu  
 shoot utsu/uchimasu,  
     uchikorosu/uchikoroshimasu  
 shop o-mise  
 short (people) se ga hikui  
 short (things) mijikai  
 should, 16, 18  
 show miseru/misemasu  
 shut *vt.* shimeru/shimemasu  
 shut *vi.* shimaru/shimarimasu  
 shut, be shimatte iru/imasu  
 sick byōki (na)  
 sick of, be ni akiru/akimasu  
 side soba  
 signpost hyōshiki  
 simple kantan (na)  
 since kara; 8  
 sing utau/utaimasu  
 singer kashu  
 single (unmarried) *adj.* dokushin  
     (no)  
 Sir sensei  
 sister imōto, ane, o-nē-san; 9  
 sit suwaru/suwarimasu,  
     kakeru/kakemasu  
 sit cross-legged agura o  
     kaku/kakimasu  
 sixth glass roppaime  
 size ōkisa  
 ski sukī suru/shimasu  
 slam batan to  
     shimeru/shimemasu  
 sleep neru/nemasu  
 slow osoi  
 slowly osoku, yukkuri to  
 small chīsai, chīsa na  
 smell *n.* nioi  
 smell *vi.* nioi ga suru/shimasu; 13  
 smoke tabako o suu/suimasu  
 snow *n.* yuki  
 so, 9  
 so as to, 12

society shakai  
 soft yawarakai  
 softball sofutobōru  
 sold out urikire  
 some, 14  
 some ... other, 14  
 somebody, 14  
 someone, 14  
 something, 14  
 sometime, 14  
 somewhere, 14  
 son musuko(-san); 9  
 song uta  
 soon mō sugu; 4  
 sorry sumimasen, shitsurei  
     suru/shimasu, gomen nasai  
 sorts of, all iroiro (na), ironna (na)  
 sound oto; 13  
 sound like, 13  
 soya sauce shōyu  
 speak hanasu/hanashimasu,  
     hanashi o suru/shimasu  
 spend (time) kakeru/kakemasu  
 spend (money)  
     tsukau/tsukaimasu  
 spicy karai  
 splendid kekkō (na), rippa (na)  
 spoon supūn  
 spoonful hai; 5  
 sport supōtsu  
 spring haru  
 stamp kitte  
 stand (up) *vt.* tateru/tatemasu  
 stand (up) *vi.* tatsu/tachimasu  
 start *vt.* hajimeru/hajimemasu  
 start *vi.* hajimaru/hajimarimasu  
 start to -hajimeru/-hajimemasu;  
     9n.9  
 station eki  
 stay (the night)  
     tomaru/tomarimasu  
 stay behind nokoru/nokorimasu  
 steal nusumu/nusumimasu  
 still mada; 4  
 stop *vt.* yameru/yamemasu,  
     tomeru/tomemasu

stop *vi.* yamu/yamimasu,  
     tomaru/tomarimasu  
 story hanashi  
 straight massugu  
 straight away ima sugu  
 strange hen (na), okashii, okashi  
     na  
 street michi, tōri  
 stretch *vt.* nobasu/nobashimasu  
 strong tsuyoi  
 student gakusei  
 study benkyō suru/shimasu  
 stupid baka (na)  
 sugar satō  
 suitcase sūtsukēsu  
 summer natsu  
 Sunday nichiyōbi  
 suppose, I darō/deshō; 9  
 supposed to hazu; 9  
 sure, I'm not quite chotto  
     wakarimasen  
 sweet *adj.* amai  
 swim oyogu/oyogimasu  
 swing, get into the chōshi ga  
     deru/demasu

table tēburu  
 take toru/torimasu  
 take (person) tsurete iku/ikimasu  
 take (thing) motte iku/ikimasu  
 take (time) kakaru/kakarimasu  
 take care chūi suru/shimasu; 12  
 take off *vi.* nugu/nugimasu  
 take (time) off  
     yasumu/yasumimasu  
 take out dasu/dashimasu  
 talk hanasu/hanashimasu  
 tall se ga takai  
 taste *n.* aji  
 taste *vt.* aji ga suru/shimasu; 13  
 tasty oishii  
 taxi takushī  
 tea (English-type) kōcha  
 tea (Japanese) o-cha  
 teach oshieru/oshiemasu  
 teacher sensei

telephone *n.* denwa  
 television terebi  
 tell iu/imasu,  
     oshieru/oshiemasu; 11  
 tell off shikaru/shikarimasu  
 temperature (fever) netsu  
 temple (o-)tera, -ji  
 terrible hidoi, osoroshii, sugoi  
 terrorist terorisuto  
 thank you dōmo arigatō  
     gozaimasu/gozaimashita  
 that *n.* sore, are; 2  
 that *adj.* sono, ano; 2  
 that sort of sonna, anna; 2  
 there (a)soko; 2  
 thin hosoi  
 thing (abstract) koto  
 thing (concrete) mono  
 think omou/omoiyasu,  
     kangaeru/kangaemasu; 11  
 thirsty, be nodo ga kawaii  
     iru/imasu; 8, 19  
 this *adj.* kono  
 this *n.* kore  
 this year kotoshi  
 thought *n.* shisō  
 throw nageru/nagemasu  
 throw away suteru/sutemasu  
 Thursday mokuyōbi  
 ticket kippu  
 tidy (up) *vt.* sōji suru/shimasu,  
     katazukeru/katazukemasu,  
     kirei ni suru/shimasu  
 tidy *adj.* kirei (na)  
 tight kitsui  
 till made  
 time jikan  
 time, be on (for) (ni) ma ni  
     au/aimasu  
 tire, become tired  
     tsukareru/tsukaremasu  
 tired, be tsukarete iru/imasu; 8  
 to e, ni, made, to; 3, 4, 5  
 toast tōsuto  
 toast (drink a) kanpai  
     suru/shimasu

today kyō  
 together (with) (to) issho ni; 4  
 toilet toire, o-tearai, benjo  
 tomorrow ashita  
 tonight konban, konya  
 too mo  
 too (much) sugiru/sugimasu; 6  
 top ue  
 town machi  
 toy o-mocha  
 traffic kōtsū  
 traffic lights shingō  
 train densha  
 translate yaku suru/shimasu  
 travel ryokō suru/shimasu  
 tree ki  
 tricky yayakoshii  
 trouble *n.* mondai  
 trouble *vt.* (ni) meiwaku o  
 kakeru/kakemasu  
 true hontō (no)  
 try ...ing te miru/mimasu; 6n.17,  
 7n.4, 8n.1  
 try on (shoes, socks, trousers,  
 skirt) haite miru/mimasu  
 Thursday mokuyōbi  
 Tuesday kayōbi  
 turn (corner) (o)  
 magaru/magarimasu  
 turn down oto o chīsaku  
 suru/shimasu; 6  
 turn off kesu/keshimasu  
 turn on tsukeru/tsukemasu  
 turn up oto o ōkiku  
 suru/shimasu; 6  
 turning (magari)kado  
 typhoon taifū  
  
 umbrella kasa  
 umm sō desu ne, etto  
 unbearably te tamaranai; 16  
 uncle oji(-san); 9  
 under(neath) shita  
 understand wakaru/wakarimasu;  
 12  
 uninteresting omoshiroku nai

university daigaku  
 unlike to chigatte; 13  
 unpleasant iya (na)  
 until made; 17  
 us watashitachi  
 use tsukau/tsukaimasu  
 used to, be ni narete iru/imasu  
 used to, get ni nareru/naremasu  
 useless dame (na)  
 usual futsū (no)  
 usually futsū

various iroiro (na), iron(na)  
 very totemo, amari (with negative); 6  
 via keiyu  
 view keshiki  
 view (opinion) iken  
 visit tazuneru/tazunemasu  
 visitor o-kyaku-san  
 volcano kazan

wait (for) (o) matsu/machimasu  
 walk aruku/arukimasu  
 wallet saifu  
 want (to), 12  
 war sensō  
 ward ku; 18  
 warm atatakai, attakai  
 wash arau/araimasu  
 watch *n.* tokei  
 watch *see* look at  
 water mizu  
 water (drinking) o-mizu  
 way to/of -kata; 7n.1  
 we watashitachi  
 weak yowai  
 weapon buki, heiki  
 wear kuru/kimasu,  
 haku/hakimasu,  
 kaburu/kaburimasu; 15n.2  
 weather (forecast) tenki(yohō)  
 Wednesday suiyōbi  
 week shūkan; 5  
 well *adj.* (o-)genki (na)  
 well *adv.* yoku, jōzu ni  
 what *n.* nan(i); 3

what *adj.* dono; 3  
 whatever, 15  
 when itsu, toki; 3, 17  
 whenever, 15  
 where doko, dochira; 3  
 wherever, 15  
 whether ka dō ka; 11  
 which *n.* dore  
 which *adj.* dono  
 which one, 3  
 whichever, 15  
 while aida (ni), -nagara; 17  
 whisky uisukī  
 white shiroi  
 who dare, donata; 3  
 whoever, 15  
 whose dare, donata no  
 why naze, dōshite; 9, 18  
 wide hiroi  
 wife oku-san; 9  
 wife, my kanai; 9  
 win katsu/kachimasu  
 wind kaze  
 window mado  
 wine wain  
 wine, rice (o-)sake  
 wing tsubasa

winter fuyu  
 wish, 18  
 with de, to, (to) issho ni; 3, 4  
 without ...ing, 7  
 wonder, I deshō ka; 9  
 wood ki  
 word kotoba, tango  
 word processor wā puro  
 work *n.* shigoto, kaisha  
 work *vi.* hataraku/hatarakimasu; 8  
 world yo no naka  
 worry *n.* shinpai  
 worry *vi.* shinpai suru/shimasu  
 would, 16  
 write kaku/kakimasu  
 writer sakka  
 wrong, it's chigau/chigaimasu

year toshi, nen; 5, 8  
 yellow kiroi, kiiro (no)  
 yen en  
 yes hai  
 yesterday kinō  
 yet mada, mo; 4  
 you anata(tachi)  
 young wakai  
 your anata(tachi) no

## Japanese-English

ā oh  
 ā that way; 6  
 abunai dangerous  
 achira over there  
 agaru/agarimasu go up, come in;  
 20  
 ageru/agemasu give; 10  
 agura o kaku/kakimasu sit cross-  
 legged  
 ai love *n.*  
 aida while, during, between; 17  
 aisuru/shimasu love *vt.*; 8  
 aite another person, partner  
 aite iru/imasu be open; 8

aji taste  
 aji ga suru/shimasu taste; 13  
 aka-chan baby  
 akai red  
 akarui light *adj.*  
 akeru/akemasu open *vt.*  
 akiru/akimasu become sick of  
 akirameru/akiramemasu give up  
 aku/akimasu open *vi.*  
 amai sweet  
 amari too much, not very; 5, 6, 16  
 ame rain *n.*  
 ame ga furu/furimasu rain *vi.*  
 Amerika America

Amerikajin American (person)  
ana hole  
anata you  
anatatachi you  
ani big brother; 9  
anki suru/shimasu learn off by heart  
anna that sort of  
anna ni that much  
(go) annai suru/shimasu guide  
anō that *adj.*; 3  
anō umm  
anzen (na) safe  
aoi blue  
apāto apartment, flat  
arau/araimasu wash  
arawasu/arawashimasu express are that *n.*  
arigatō/arigatō gozaimasu thank you; 4  
aru/arimasu be, have; 3, 12  
aru certain, some; 14  
aruite on foot; 7  
aruku/arukimasu walk *v.*  
asa morning  
asa-gohan breakfast  
asatte the day after tomorrow  
ashi leg, foot  
ashita tomorrow  
asobi ni kuru/kimasu come round  
asobu/asobimasu play  
asoko over there  
atama ga ii clever  
atama ga itai have a headache  
atarashii new  
ataitakai warm  
ato after(wards), remaining; 5n.9  
atsui hot  
atsumaru/atsumarimasu gather *vi.*  
atsumeru/atsumemasu gather *vt.*  
attakai warm  
au/aimasu meet  
ayamaru/ayamarimasu apologize  
ā yatte, 6  
(o-)azukari shimasu/itashimasu receive

-ba if; 15, 18  
bā bar  
bāgen sēru sale  
baito part-time work  
baka (na) stupid  
bakari just, nothing but; 8n.10  
bakudan bomb  
bakuhatu suru/shimasu blow up *vi.*  
ban evening  
bangō number  
bangumi programme  
basho place, space  
basu bus  
basu tei bus stop  
batan to (shimeru/shimemasu) slam  
ben dialect  
benkyō suru/shimasu study  
(o-)bentō packed lunch  
betsu ni (not) particularly  
bīru beer  
bōifurendo boyfriend  
boku I; 20  
bōshi o kaburu (kaburimasu) wear a hat  
bosu boss  
buji (na) safe  
bukka prices, cost of living  
bunpō grammar  
bunshō sentence  
byōki (na) sick, ill  
cha/o-cha tea, tea ceremony  
chairo (no) brown  
chan to properly  
chekkuin suru/shimasu check in  
chichi father; 9  
(to) chigatte unlike  
chigau/chigaimasu be different; 2, 6  
chikaku nearby  
chikara strength, ability  
chīsai/chīsa na small  
chizu map  
chōdo just; 17

chōshi ga deru/demasu get into the swing of things  
chotto a bit, little  
Chūgoku China  
Chūgokugo Chinese (language)  
Chūgokujin Chinese (person)  
chūi suru/shimasu take care; 12  
chūko secondhand  
chūō(guchi) central (exit)  
chūshi ni naru/narimasu be abandoned

da/desu be; 2  
dai cost  
daigaku university  
daiji (na) important  
daijōbu (na) O.K.  
daikirai (na) loath(ed); 12  
daikōbutsu favourite (thing)  
daisuki really like(d); 12  
dake only; 5  
dake quantity; 16  
(10en) dama (10-yen) coin  
dame (na) useless, no good; 15  
danna-san (your) husband  
dare who; 3  
dareka, 14  
daremo, 14  
darō/deshō (ka), 9  
dasu/dashimasu get/take out  
datte even; 20  
de, 3, 7  
(ni) deau/deaimasu bump (into)  
de gozaru/gozaimasu be; 4n.3  
deguchi exit  
de irassharu/irasshaimasu be; 2  
dekakeru/dekakemasu go out  
dekiru/dekimasu able, be ready, be complete, can do; 12, 15  
dekiru dake as much as possible; 16  
demo even, but, or something; 3n.6, 14  
denki light, electricity  
densha train  
denwa telephone *n.*

denwa o kakeru/kakemasu telephone *vt.*  
depāto department store  
deru/demasu go out, appear (on TV)  
deshō probably; 9  
deshō ka I wonder; 9  
dete iru/imasu be out, have gone out, be on (TV)  
dō how (about); 3, 6, 11, 18  
doa door  
dochira, 3, 16  
dochiraka, 14  
dochiramo, 14  
dochira-sama who; 3, 20  
dō itashimashite a pleasure  
dōjo martial arts hall  
dōki motive  
dōko where; 3  
dokoka, 14  
dokomo, 14  
dokutoku (no) peculiarly, peculiar to, unique to  
dokyumentarī documentary  
dōmo (arigatō) (thank you), somehow  
donata who; 3, 14  
donatamo, 14  
donna what sort of; 3  
donna ni how; 6  
dono what, which *adj.*, 3  
dore which *n.*  
dore dake, 16  
dore gurai how much/long; 8, 16  
dore hodo, 16  
doreka, 14  
doremo, 14  
doresu dress  
dorobō robber  
dōshite why; 9  
dō yatte, 6  
doyōbi Saturday  
dōzo go ahead, please do; 4



e to(wards); 3  
 earoguramu aerogramme  
 ebi prawn  
 ebifurai fried prawn  
 eiga film (movie)  
 eigakan cinema  
 Eigo English (language)  
 eiji shinbun English language newspaper  
 Eikoku Britain, England  
 eikyō influence  
 eki station  
 eki-mae in front of the station  
 en yen; 5  
 enpitsu pencil  
 erabu/erabimasu choose  
 erai good for you, great  
 etto umm

fuan fan  
 fueru/fuemasu increase *vi.*  
 fuirumu film (camera)  
 fuku fork  
 fukuzatsu (na) complex  
 fun minute; 5, 8  
 funabin seama  
 furaido poteto fried potato  
 Furansu France  
 (o-)furo bath  
 furoshiki cloth for wrapping things in  
 (ame ga) furu/furimasu rain *v.*  
 furui old (things)  
 fushōsha injured (people)  
 fusuma paper (sliding) screen  
 futari two people  
 futsū (no) usual, normal; 2  
 futsū usually, normally  
 futsukayoi hangover  
 fuyu winter

ga but, and; 3, 4  
 gai(koku)jin foreigner, alien  
 gaishoku suru/shimasu eat out  
 gakkō school, university  
 gakubu (academic) department

gakusei(-san) student  
 gārufurendo girlfriend  
 gasu gas  
 gatsu month; 5  
 genki (na) well  
 getsu month; 8  
 getsuyōbi Monday  
 ginkō bank  
 gitā guitar  
 go-chisō meal  
 go-chisō sama deshita thank you for the meal  
 gogo afternoon, p.m.  
 gohan rice, (cooked) meal  
 gomen nasai/kudasai excuse me  
 go-ran ni naru/narimasu look; 20  
 gōriteki (na) sensible  
 goro about; 5  
 gorufu golf  
 gozaru/gozaimasu be; 2, 4n.9  
 gozen a.m.  
 go-zonji desu know; 20  
 gurai about, extent; 5, 12n.1, 16

hagaki postcard  
 haha mother; 9  
 hai yes  
 hai (counter), 5  
 haiken itasu/itashimasu see, look at; 5n.12, 20  
 hairu/hairimasu enter, go in  
 haitte iru/imasu be in(side)  
 hajimaru/hajimarimasu begin, start *vi.*  
 hajimemashite pleased to meet you  
 hajimeru/hajimemasu begin, start *vt.*  
 -hajimeru/-hajimemasu start to; 9n.9  
 hajimete for the first time  
 hakkiri clearly; 6  
 hakkiri shite iru/imasu be clear  
 hako box  
 haku/hakimasu wear  
 hakusa white sand

han half past; 5  
 hana flower  
 hanashi story, talk  
 hanashichū engaged (phone)  
 hanasu/hanashimasu talk, speak  
 hanayome shugyō bride's training  
 hanbāgā hamburger  
 harau/haraimasu pay  
 hare fine weather  
 hareru/haremasu clear up  
 haru spring  
 hashi chopsticks  
 hashiru/hashirimasu run  
 hataraku/hatarakimasu work  
 hatashite after all  
 hatsu departure  
 hatsuon accent  
 hayai fast, quick, early  
 hazu due to, supposed to; 9  
 hazukashii embarrassed  
 (seki o) hazushite iru/imasu be out of one's seat  
 hen area  
 hen (na) odd  
 heya room  
 hi day  
 hidari left  
 hidoi awful  
 higashi east  
 hijō ni extremely  
 hikaeru/hikaemasu refrain from  
 hikidashi drawer  
 hikōki plane  
 hikui low  
 hima (na) free  
 himitsu secret  
 hiraku/hirakimasu open *vt.*  
 hirau/hiraimasu pick up  
 hiroi wide, large (space)  
 hirou/hiroimasu pick up  
 hisashiburi not for a long time  
 hīta heater  
 hito person  
 hitokoto a word  
 hitori de alone

hitotachi people  
 hitsuyō (na) necessary  
 hō side; 16  
 hodo extent; 15n.1, 16n.5, 18  
 (no) hoka (ni) other, apart from, in addition to; 14n.4  
 hon(ya-san) book(shop)  
 hon (counter), 5  
 Hon Kon Hong Kong  
 hontō (no) real, true; 2  
 hoshigaru/hoshigarimasu want; 12  
 hoshii desire(d), want; 12  
 hosoi thin  
 hosonagai long and thin  
 hoteru hotel  
 hotondo almost (all)  
 hyōshiki signpost  
 hyotto suru to perhaps; 9

i stomach  
 ii good, nice, right  
 ichiban most, best; 16  
 ichido onetime, once  
 i-chōen gastroenteritis  
 ie house  
 īe no  
 Igirisu England  
 Igrisujin English (person)  
 ikaga how; 3, 18  
 iken opinion  
 ikite iru/imasu be alive; 8  
 iku/ikimasu go; 7, 20  
 ikura how much; 5  
 ikuraka, 14  
 ikura(de)mo, 14, 15  
 ikutsu how many, how old; 5  
 ikutsuka, 14  
 ijō more than; 16n.3  
 ima now; 4  
 ima (no) present  
 ima no tokoro at the moment  
 imi meaning; 11  
 imōto(-san) young sister; 9  
 inaka country(side)  
 inoru/inorimasu pray; 12

**insutanto** instant  
**ippai** full  
**(go-)ippaku** one night  
**irasshaimase** welcome  
**irassharu/irasshaimasu** be, come, go; 20  
**ireru/iremasu** put in, make (tea)  
**iro** colour  
**iroiro (na)** various  
**ironna** various  
**iru/imasu** be; 3  
**iru/irimasu** need, be necessary; 12  
**ishi** stone  
**isogashii** busy  
**isogu/isogimasu** hurry  
**isoide** in a hurry  
**(to) issho ni** with; 4  
**isu** chair  
**itadaku/itadakimasu** have, eat, receive, get; 7,10, 20  
**itai** painful  
**itasu/itashimasu** do; 4n.1, 10, 20  
**itsu** when, what time; 3  
**itsuka**, 14  
**itsukara** since when; 8  
**itsumo**, 14  
**itte kuru/kimasu** go (for a short time)  
**iu/iimasu** say, tell; 11  
**iya (na)** unpleasant  
  
**ja arimasen**, 2  
**jazu** jazz  
**ji** writing  
**ji(kan)** time; 5, 8  
**jidaigeki** period play  
**jiki** time, season  
**jiko (ni au/aimasu)** (have an) accident  
**jinan** second son; 9  
**jinkō** population  
**jishin** earthquake  
**jisho** dictionary  
**jitensha** bicycle  
**jōdan** joke  
**jōshaken** ticket

**jōtatsu suru/shimasu** progress  
**jōzu (na)** good at; 12  
**jugyō** lectures  
**junbi** preparation  
**juwaki** receiver  
  
**ka**, 2, 3  
**-ka**, 14  
**-ka ... ka**, 2  
**kaban** bag  
**kaburu/kaburimasu**, 15n.2  
**kachi** worth; 14  
**kado** corner  
**kādo** card  
**kaeru/kaemasu** change *vt.*  
**kaeru/kaerimasu** go back/home  
**kaesu/kaeshimasu** return *vt.*  
**kaette kuru/kimasu** come home  
**kagiri** as long as, extent; 17  
**kai** floor, time (*counter*); 5  
**kaigai** abroad  
**kaigi** conference  
**kaisha** company, work, the office  
**kaishain** businessman  
**kakaru/kakarimasu** take (time), cost (money)  
**kakejiku** scroll  
**kakeru/kakemasu** pour, phone, sit down  
**kakitoru/kakitorimasu** write down  
**kaku/kakimasu** write  
**kakuheiki** nuclear weapons  
**kamau/kamaimasu** care, mind, 15  
**kamera** camera  
**kami** paper  
**ka mo shiremasen** maybe; 9  
**Kanada** Canada  
**kanai** my wife; 9  
**kanarazu** necessarily, always  
**kanari** quite  
**kanashii** sad  
**(o-)kane** money  
**kangae** idea  
**kangaeru/kangaemasu** think, consider

**Kankoku** Korea  
**Kankokugo** Korean (language)  
**Kankokujin** Korean (person)  
**kanji** Chinese character  
**kanji** feeling; 13  
**(o-)kanjō** bill  
**kanpai** cheers  
**kanpai suru/shimasu** drink a toast  
**konojo** she, her, girlfriend; 2  
**kanōsei** possibility  
**Kansai** Osaka/Kobe area  
**kantan (na)** simple, easy  
**Kantō** Tokyo area  
**kao** face; 13  
**kara** and so; 9  
**kara** after, since, from; 3, 7, 8  
**karada** body  
**karai** spicy, hot  
**kare** he, him; 2  
**karera** they, them; 2  
**karimasu (kariru)** borrow  
**karuchā shokku** culture shock  
**karui** light  
**kasa** umbrella  
**kashikoi** clever  
**kashikomarimashita** I have understood (and will do as you say); 4n.7  
**kashu** singer  
**kata** shoulder  
**-kata** way to; 7n.1  
**katachi** shape; 13  
**katai** hard  
**katamichi** one way  
**katsu/kachimasu** win  
**katsudō** activity  
**kau/kaimasu** buy  
**kawaii** cute  
**(nodo ga) kawaite iru/imasu** be thirsty; 8  
**(nodo ga) kawaku/kawakimasu** get thirsty  
**(to) kawaru/kawarimasu** differ from, change *vi.*  
**kayōbi** Tuesday

**kazan** volcano  
**kaze** wind  
**kaze o hiku/hikimasu** catch a cold  
**kazu** number  
**ke(re)domo** but  
**keiken suru/shimasu** experience  
**keisatsu(kan)** police(man)  
**keiyu (de)** via  
**keizai** economy  
**keizaiteki** economic(al)  
**kekko (na)** splendid, fine  
**kekkon shite iru/imasu** be married  
**kekkon suru/shimasu** marry  
**kekkyoku** after all  
**kendō** the art of the (bamboo) sword  
**kenkyū suru/shimasu** research  
**keredomo** but  
**kesa** this morning  
**kesshite** definitely  
**kichigai (na)** mad, crazy  
**kigaeru/kigaemasu** (get) change(d)  
**ki ga suru/shimasu** feel; 13  
**kiiro(ppoi)** yellow(ish)  
**kiji** article  
**kikō** weather, climate  
**kikoku suru/shimasu** return to one's country  
**kiku/kikimasu** ask, hear, listen to; 11  
**kimeru/kimemasu** decide  
**kimochi** feeling  
**kindaishi** modern history  
**kinō** yesterday  
**kinpen** neighbourhood  
**kinshi** forbidden  
**kinyōbi** Friday  
**kioku** memory  
**kippu** ticket  
**kirai (na)** dislike(d); 12  
**kirai (na)** pretty  
**kiru/kimasu** wear; 15n.2  
**kiru/kirimasu** cut

**kisha** reporter  
**kissaten** coffee shop  
**kita** north  
**kitsui** tight  
**kitte** stamp  
**kō** in this way; 6  
**kōban** police office  
**kōcha** (English-type) tea  
**kochira** this one; 2, 16  
**kodomo** child(ren)  
**kōhī** coffee  
**koi** thick, strong  
**koko** here, this (place)  
**kōkō jidai** high-school days  
**kōkoku** advertisement  
**kōkūbin** airmail  
**kōkū gaisha** airline company  
**komakai o-kane** small change  
**komaru/komarimasu** be a nuisance, get stuck  
**komu/komimasu** get crowded  
**konban** this evening  
**konban wa** good evening  
**konbu** seaweed  
**konde iru/imasu** be crowded; 8  
**kondo wa** this time  
**konna** this sort of; 3  
**konnichi wa** hello  
**kono** this *adj.*; 2  
**konsāto** concert  
**koppu** cup  
**kōra** cola  
**kore** this; 2  
**korobu/korobimasu** fall over  
**koshō shite iru/imasu** be broken down  
**koshō suru/shimasu** break down  
**kotatsu** table with heater attached  
**koto** (abstract) thing; 15, 17  
**kōto** coat  
**kotoba** word, language  
**kotoshi** this year  
**kotowaru/kotowarimasu** refuse  
**(o-)kotozuke** message  
**kowai** afraid, frightening  
**kowasu/kowashimasu** break

**kōza o hiraku/hirakimasu** open an account  
**kozutsumi** parcel  
**ku** ward (of a city)  
**kuchi o dasu/dashimasu** interrupt  
**kudasai** please; 4, 7  
**kudasaru/kudasaimasu** give; 10  
**kuizu** quiz  
**kūkō** airport  
**kuni** country (nation)  
**kurabu katsudō** club activities  
**kurasu** class  
**kureru/kuremasu** give; 10  
**kurō suru/shimasu** suffer  
**kuro(ppo)i** black(ish)  
**kuru/kimasu** come; 7, 20  
**kuruma** car, taxi  
**kusuri** medicine  
**kutsu** shoes  
**kutsushita** socks  
**kuzusu/kuzushimasu** change (money)  
**(o-)kyaku-san/sama** guest, customer  
**kyō** today  
**(go-)kyōdai** brothers; 9  
**kyōmi** interest  
**(ni) kyōmi o motte iru/imasu** have an interest in  
**kyonen** last year  
**kyū ni** suddenly  
**kyūkyūsha** ambulance  
  
**mā** well, anyway  
**machiawase** arrangement to meet  
**machiawase suru/shimasu** arrange to meet  
**machigaeru/machigaemasu** get the wrong ..., mistake *vt.*  
**mada** not yet; 4, 8  
**made** until; 17  
**mado** window  
**mae** before, in front of, to (time); 3, 5, 17

**mafurā** scarf  
**magaru/magarimasu** turn  
**mai** (*counter*), 5  
**mainen** every year  
**mainichi** every day  
**mairu/mairimasu** go, come; 10, 20  
**maitsuki** every month  
**maku-no-uchi** lunch  
**mā mā** all right (not too good)  
**manga** comic, cartoon  
**ma ni au/aimasu** be in time  
**manjū** bean cake  
**-mashō (ka)** let's, shall we; 3n.10  
**massugu** straight (ahead)  
**mata** again  
**matsu/machimasu** wait for  
**mattaku** completely  
**mawaru/mawarimasu** go round  
**mawasu/mawashimasu** dial, turn round *vt.*  
**mazu** first (of all)  
**mazui** poor tasting  
**me** eye  
**-me**, 5  
**(o-)medetō gozaimasu** congratulations  
**megane o kakeru/kakemasu** wear glasses  
**meishi** name card  
**mekura** blind  
**menseki** area  
**meshiagaru/meshiagarimasu** eat, drink; 17n.1, 20  
**(o-)miai** arranged marriage  
**michi** road, way  
**midori(iro)(no)** green; 2  
**migi** right  
**mijikai** short  
**mikan** (an) orange  
**mina/minna** all, everybody  
**minami** south  
**miru/mimasu** see, look at, watch  
**(te) miru/mimasu** try doing ... , do and see; 6n.17, 7n.7, 8n.4  
**miruku** milk  
**miruku-tei** milk tea  
  
**(o-)mise** shop  
**miseru/misemasu** show  
**mitai** seem, look like; 13  
**mitsudo** density  
**mitsukaru/mitsukarimasu** be found  
**mitsukeru/mitsukemasu** find  
**mo**, 2, 4  
**-mo**, 14, 15  
**mo ... mo** also, too, even  
**mō** already, now; 4  
**mō (hitotsu)** (one) more; 5  
**mō sukoshi** a little more; 5  
**mokuyōbi** Thursday  
**mondai** problem, question  
**mōningu (sābisu)** light breakfast  
**mono** (concrete) thing  
**morau/moraimasu** have, get, receive; 10  
**moshi** if; 18  
**moshi ka suru to** perhaps; 9  
**moshi moshi** hello  
**mōshi wake**  
**nai/arimasen/gozaimasen** I'm sorry  
**mōsu/mōshimasu** say; 3, 10, 20  
 **Motsu/mochimasu** hold  
**motte iru/imasu** have (got); 8  
**motte kuru/kimasu** bring  
**mottomo** most; 16  
**mugicha** wheat tea  
**mukai** opposite  
**mukashi** a long time ago  
**mukō** beyond; 3  
**muri (na)** forced, impossible  
**mushiatsui** humid, sticky  
**musuko(-san)** son; 9  
**musume(-san)** daughter; 9  
**muzukashii** difficult  
  
**n umm**  
**nado** etcetera; 4  
**nagai** long  
**-nagara** while; 17  
**nai**, 6  
**naifu** knife



naka inside; 3  
nakanaka rather, very  
naku/nakimasu cry  
naku naru/narimasu disappear,  
die; 12  
namae name  
nan(i) what; 3, 5  
nanbai, 5  
nanban what number  
nanbansen what platform  
nanbon, 5  
nandemo, 15  
n'an desu, 9n.4  
nangatsu, 5  
nanika, 14, 15  
nanimono, 14  
nanji(kan), 5, 8  
nankagetsu, 8  
nankai, 5  
nanmai, 5  
nannen(kan), 5, 8  
nannichi, 5, 8  
nannin, 5  
nansai, 5  
nansatsu, 5  
nanshūkan, 5  
nante, 12n.4, 20  
nanyōbi, 5  
naosu/naoshimasu repair,  
correct  
nara if; 18  
narau/naraimasu learn  
nareru/naremasu get used to  
narete iru/imasu be used to  
naru/narimasu become; 6, 12, 15  
naruhodo I see  
nasaru/nasaimasu do; 9, 20  
natsu summer  
nattō fermented soya  
naze why; 9  
n'dattara if; 18  
n'deshitara if; 18  
n'desu the fact, reason is; 9  
ne, 2  
(o-)negai suru/shimasu please!  
request

nekutai tie *n.*  
nen year; 5, 8  
neru/nemasu sleep, go to bed  
nete iru/imasu be asleep  
netsu heat, temperature  
ni in, to; 3, 4, 5, 19  
nibai twice; 16  
nichi day; 5  
nichijō(seikatsu) daily life  
nichiyōbi Sunday  
nigeru/nigemasu escape  
Nihon Japan  
Nihongo Japanese (language)  
Nihonjin Japanese (person)  
Nihonma Japanese-style room  
Nihonshu rice wine  
Nihonteki (na) Japanese  
nikui difficult to; 6n.5  
nimotsu luggage  
ninki ga aru/arimasu  
be popular  
nioi smell; 13  
nishi west  
niwa garden  
ni yotte by (means of); 19  
n'ja nai desu ka isn't it the case  
that; 12n.5  
no 's, of; 2, 3  
no the fact, thing, one; 15  
nō 'No' play  
nobasu/nobashimasu stretch *vt.*  
noboru/noborimasu climb  
nochihodo later  
no de and so; 9  
nodo throat  
nokoru/nokorimasu remain,  
be left/stay behind  
nomimono drink *n.*  
nomu/nomimasu drink *vt.*  
no ni although; 15, 20n.1  
(ni) noru/norimasu get on, ride  
on, board  
nugu/nugimasu take off  
nuku/nukimasu pull out  
nurui tepid  
nusumu/nusumimasu steal

nyūin suru/shimasu enter  
hospital  
nyūsu news  
o, 4  
o-azukari shimasu/itashimasu I  
receive; 4, 5, 6, 20  
o-basan aunt; 9  
o-bāsan grandmother; 9  
oboeru/oboemasu learn,  
remember  
o-cha tea (ceremony), Japanese tea  
o-daiji ni take care  
ōfuku return  
o-furo bath  
o-genki well  
o-hana flower arranging  
o-hayō gozaimasu good morning  
o-hisashiburi desu I haven't seen  
you for ages  
ōi many  
o-ide ni naru/narimasu be,  
come, go; 14n.1, 20  
oishii tasty  
oitsuku/oitsukimasu catch up  
o-jama shimasu excuse me  
ojisan uncle; 9  
ojīsan grandfather; 9  
o-jōzu good (at); 6, 12  
o-kaeshi change  
o-kage-sama de thanks to you  
o-kane money  
o-kanjō bill  
okā-san mother; 9  
okashii, okashi na funny, odd  
ōkii, ōki (na) big, large  
okiru/okimasu get up  
okite iru/imasu be up  
okoru/okorimasu get angry  
okotte iru/imasu be angry  
oku/okimasu put; 18n.4  
okuru/okurimasu send  
oku-san wife; 9  
o-mae you; 20  
omedetō gozaimasu  
congratulations; 10n.5

o-me ni kakaru/kakarimasu  
meet; 20  
o-miai arranged marriage  
o-mise shop  
o-mocha toy  
omoshiroi interesting, funny  
omou/omoiyasu think; 11  
(to) onaji same (as); 6  
(to) onaji yō ni in same way (as)  
o-naka stomach  
onchi tone deaf  
o-negai shimasu please; 4  
o-nēsan big sister; 9  
o-nīsan big brother; 9  
onna woman  
onna no hito woman  
onna no ko girl  
o-nomimono drink  
ore I; 20  
oriru/orimasu get off  
orosu/oroshimasu let off  
oru/orimasu be; 3, 20  
Ōsaka-ben Osaka dialect  
o-sake rice wine, alcoholic  
drink  
o-saki ni after you  
o-sara plate  
oshieru/oshiemasu teach, tell  
osoi late, slow  
o-somatsu sama deshita I am  
sorry it was a poor meal  
osoraku presumably; 9  
ossharu/osshaimasu say; 20  
o-sumai residence  
o-taku residence  
o-tearai toilet  
o-tera temple  
oto sound  
ōtobai motorbike  
otoko (no hito) man  
otoko no ko boy  
otona adult  
otōsan father; 9  
otōto younger brother; 9  
ototoi day before yesterday  
o-tsuri change

owaru/owarimasu finish, end  
*vi., vt.*

o-yasumi nasai good night  
oyogu/oyogimasu swim  
o-yu hot/boiling water

pasupōto passport  
pātei o hiraku/hirakimasu hold  
a party  
perapera fluent  
pikunikku picnic  
poketto pocket  
potsupotsu spit (rain)  
purezento present

ragubī rugby  
rainen next year  
raishū next week  
rajio radio  
rashii, 13  
rei example  
reigai exception  
reizōko fridge  
rekishi history  
renshū practice  
renshū suru/shimasu practise  
rentogen X-ray  
repōto report, essay  
riyū reason  
rōmaji Romanized Japanese  
ryō dormitory  
ryōri cooking  
(go)ryōshin parents; 9  
ryūchō (ni) fluent(ly)  
ryūgaku study abroad

sabazushi mackerel sushi  
sagasu/sagashimasu look for  
sai (*counter*), 5  
saichū in the middle; 17  
saifu wallet, purse  
saigo last  
saikin recently  
saikin (no) recent  
saikō excellent  
saisho first

sakana fish  
sakana-ya fish shop  
sake rice wine  
saki ahead; 2  
sakka author, writer  
sakkā soccer  
sakuya last night  
sameru/samemasu get cold  
samishii lonely  
samui cold (weather)  
samurai warrior  
sappari not at all  
sararīman businessman  
sashiageru/sashiagemasu give; 10  
sashimi raw fish  
satō sugar  
satsu note (money), book  
counter; 5  
sayonara goodbye  
se ga hikui short  
se ga takai tall  
seiiji politics  
seijika politician  
seijiteki (na) political  
seikatsu life  
seito pupil  
seiyō the West  
seki seat  
seki o hazusu/hazushimasu be  
absent from one's seat  
sekken soap  
sen plug (bath)  
sengetsu last month  
senmenki basin  
sensei teacher, professor, Sir  
senshū last week  
sensō war  
sensu fan  
setsumei explanation  
setsumei suru/shimasu explain  
shaberu/shaberimasu speak, talk  
shachō company president  
shakai society  
shashin photo  
shatsu shirt  
shi and; 6n.4

shiai match  
shibaraku for a while  
shidai depending on; 9n.6  
shigoto work  
shika only; 5  
shikaru/shikarimasu tell off  
shikashi but  
shiki four seasons  
shikki lacquerware  
shimaru/shimarimasu shut,  
close *vi.*  
shimatte iru/imasu be shut,  
closed; 8  
shimeru/shimemasu shut,  
close *vt.*  
shimon fingerprint  
shinbun newspaper  
shindo magnitude  
shingō traffic lights  
shinkansen bullet train  
shinnyūkinshi no entry  
shinpai worry  
shinsetsu (na) kind  
shinu/shinimasu die  
shiraberu/shirabemasu check  
shiriau/shiriainasu get to know  
shiroi white  
shiru/shirimasu (get to) know; 8  
shisō thought(s)  
shita under, below, bottom  
shitsurei (na) impolite, rude  
shitte iru/imasu know; 7  
shiyakusho city office  
shizuka (na) quiet  
shodō calligraphy  
shōgakusei primary school pupil  
shōji paper window  
shōka furyō indigestion  
shokuji meal  
shokuzen before meals  
shōshō a little  
shōtai invitation  
shōtai suru/shimasu invite  
shōtotsu collision  
shōtotsu suru/shimasu collide  
shōyu soya sauce

shufu housewife  
(go-)shujin husband; 9  
shujutsu operation  
shūkan custom  
shū(kan) week; 5, 8  
shumi pastime, taste, 'cup of tea'  
shuppan suru/shimasu publish  
shuppatsu suru/shimasu depart  
shuto capital city  
sō, 2, 3, 6  
sō appear; 13  
sobo grandmother  
sochira there  
sofu grandfather  
sofutobōru softball  
sōji suru/shimasu clean  
soko there  
sonna that sort of  
sonna ni, 16  
sono that *adj.*  
sore that *n.*  
sore ja well then  
sore kara and (then)  
soretomo or  
sorosoro soon, in a moment  
soshitara so then  
soshite and so  
sōsu sauce  
soto outside  
sotsugyō suru/shimasu graduate  
from  
sō yatte, 6  
sugiru/sugimasu too ...; 6n.16, 7,  
12, 15  
sugoi great, fantastic, terrible  
sugosu/sugoshimasu spend,  
pass time  
sugu immediately; 4, 17  
(o-naka ga) suite iru/imasu be  
hungry; 8  
suiyōbi Wednesday  
sukāto skirt  
sukī ski  
suki (na) like(d); 12  
sukikirai likes and dislikes  
sukiyaki beef dish

sukoshi a little, bit; 5  
(o-naka ga) suku/sukimasu get  
hungry  
sukunai few  
(o-)sumai residence  
sumimasen I am sorry  
sumu/sumimasu live  
sunakku bar  
sunde iru/imasu live  
supīchi speech  
supōtsu sport  
suppai sour  
suru/shimasu do, make, decide;  
3n.11, 6, 9n.7, 15, 18n.3  
sushi rice and raw fish  
suteki (na) dishy, attractive  
suteru/sutemasu throw away  
sūtsukēsu suit case  
(tabako o) suu/suimasu smoke  
suwaru/suwarimasu sit  
suzushii cool

tabako cigarette  
tabemono food  
taberu/tabemasu eat  
tabi whenever, every time; 17  
tabun perhaps; 9  
tachiyomi suru/shimasu browse  
tada free  
tadaima presently, I'm back  
taifū typhoon  
taihen (na) awful, very  
taiho suru/shimasu arrest  
takai tall, expensive  
takkyū table tennis  
takusan many, much; 5  
takushī (noriba) taxi (rank)  
takuwan pickled radish  
tamago egg  
tamariba haunt  
tame ni for purpose of, in order  
to; 15  
tango vocabulary  
tanjōbi birthday

tanomu/tanomimasu request,  
ask (for); 11  
tanoshii enjoyable, fun  
tanoshimi something to look  
forward to  
tanoshimi ni suru/shimasu look  
forward to  
taoru towel  
tara if, when; 18  
tari, 17n.5  
tatemono building  
tateru/tatemasu stand *vt.*  
tatoeba for example  
tatsu/tachimasu stand *vi.*, leave,  
pass (of time); 18n.1  
tazuneru/tazunemasu visit  
tebukuro glove  
tēburu table  
tegami letter  
teien garden  
teikō resistance  
teinei (na) polite  
temae before; 3  
te mo, 19n.2  
tenkeiteki (na) typical  
tenki weather  
tenki(yohō) weather (forecast)  
tera temple  
terebi TV  
terorisuto terrorist  
tetsudau/tetsudaimasu help  
to that, with, and, if, when, once;  
4, 11, 17, 18  
tōchaku suru/shimasu arrive  
toire toilet  
(to) isshe ni together (with)  
toka and, etcetera; 4  
tokei watch  
tokekōmu/tokekōmimasu fit  
into, melt into  
toki when; 17  
tokidoki sometimes; 9  
tokonoma alcove  
tokoro place; 17  
tokoro de by the way  
tomaru/tomarimasu stop *vi.*, stay

tomeru/tomemasu stop *vt.*  
tomodachi friend  
tonari beside; 3  
tonde mo arimasen ridiculous,  
not at all  
toranpu cards (playing)  
tōri as; 19n.4  
toreru/toremasu come off  
tōrokushō registration card  
toru/torimasu take, pass *vt.*  
tōru/tōrimasu pass *vi.*  
tōsuto toast  
totemo very (much)  
totte iku/ikimasu take  
totte kuru/kimasu go and get  
tsubasa wing  
tsugi next  
tsuiraku suru/shimasu crash  
(ni) tsuite regarding, about  
tsuite iru/imasu be on (light, TV,  
etc.)  
tsukareru/tsukaremasu become  
tired  
tsukarete iru/imasu be tired  
tsukau/tsukaimasu use  
tsukemono pickle  
tsukeru/tsukemasu put on (TV),  
attach  
tsukiataru end (of road)  
tsukiau/tsukiaimasu go out  
(with)  
tsuku/tsukimasu go on, arrive  
tsukuru/tsukurimasu make  
tsumaranai boring  
tsumetai cool, cold (to the touch)  
tsumori intention; 9  
tsurai hard work, tiring  
tsurete iku/ikimasu take (a  
person)  
tsutaeru/tsutaemasu convey,  
pass on  
(ni) tsutomeru/tsutomemasu  
work (for)  
tsūyaku suru/shimasu interpret  
tsuyoi strong  
tsuyu rainy season

tsuzukeru/tsuzukemasu continue  
*vt.*  
tsuzuku/tsuzukimasu continue  
*vi.*

uchi home, house  
uchi before; 17  
uchikorosu/uchikoroshimasu  
shoot dead  
ue top, on, above; 3  
uisukī whisky  
ukagau/ukagaimasu visit, ask;  
3n.3, 20  
ukeru/ukemasu go down well,  
receive  
umai good at, tasty  
umareru/umaremasu be born  
umeboshi sour plum  
umi(be) sea(side)  
un umm ...  
unagi bentō eel lunch  
untenshu(-san) driver  
urayamashii envious  
ureshii pleased  
uriba sales department  
uru/urimasu sell  
ushiro behind  
uta song  
utau/utaimasu sing  
utsu/uchimasu shoot  
utsukushii beautiful  
uwagi jacket

wa (subject, object, topic particle) 2,  
3, 4, 12  
wain wine  
wakai young  
wakaru/wakarimasu understand;  
12  
wake, 18n.2  
waku/wakimasu boil *vi.*  
wā puro word processor  
warau/waraimasu laugh  
wari to quite  
warui bad  
washoku Japanese food



wasureru/wasuremasu forget; 15  
 (o) wataru/watarimasu cross  
 over; 4  
 watashi I, me  
 watashitachi we, us  
 watasu/watashimasu hand over  
 wazuka a little

ya and; 4  
 yabun osoku late at night  
 yakyū baseball  
 yama mountain  
 yameru/yamemasu stop *vt.*, give  
 up; 12  
 yamu/yamimasu stop *vi.*  
 yane roof  
 yappari after all, as expected  
 yaru/yarimasu do, play  
 yasashii kind, easy  
 yasui cheap  
 -yasui easy to; 6n.5  
 yasumi holiday, rest  
 yasumu/yasumimasu rest  
 yawarakai soft  
 ayakoshii tricky  
 yo, 2  
 yō (ni) (na), 11, 12, 13  
 yo (no naka) the world  
 yobu/yobimasu call, invite, get  
 (a person)  
 yōfuku clothing  
 yōi preparation  
 yōji business  
 yokatta *see ii*  
 yokatta desu that's good

yoko ni naru/narimasu lie down  
 yoku often, well  
 yomikaki reading and writing  
 yomu/yomimasu read  
 yopparatte iru/imasu be drunk  
 yopparau/yopparaimasu get  
 drunk  
 yori than; 16  
 yoroshii good, all right, O.K.;  
 14n.6  
 (ni) yoru to according to; 13n.1  
 yotei plan; 9  
 yūbe last night  
 yūbinkyoku post office  
 yuka floor  
 yūkai suru/shimasu kidnap  
 yuki snow  
 yuki destination; 5n.7  
 yukkuri slow  
 yukkuri suru/shimasu take one's  
 time  
 yūmei (na) famous  
 yurui loose

zannen (na) regrettable  
 zasshi magazine  
 zehi by all means  
 zenbu all, everything  
 zenbu de altogether  
 zenzen (not) at all  
 zettai (ni) definitely  
 zonjiru/zonjimasu think; 20  
 zubon trousers  
 zuibun a good deal  
 zutto much (more); 16

## Appendix 1

The syllables represented in the table on page 8 are given here in *hiragana*:

|                   |                  |       |                   |      |
|-------------------|------------------|-------|-------------------|------|
| a あ               | i い              | u う   | e え               | o お  |
| ka か              | ki き             | ku く  | ke け              | ko こ |
| sa さ              | shi し            | su す  | se せ              | so そ |
| ta た              | chi ち            | tsu つ | te て              | to と |
| na な              | ni に             | nu ぬ  | ne ね              | no の |
| ha は <sup>1</sup> | hi ひ             | fu ふ  | he へ <sup>2</sup> | ho ほ |
| ma ま              | mi み             | mu む  | me め              | mo も |
| ya や              |                  | yu ゆ  |                   | yo よ |
| ra ら              | ri り             | ru る  | re れ              | ro ろ |
| wa わ              |                  |       |                   |      |
|                   | o を <sup>3</sup> |       |                   |      |
|                   | n ん              |       |                   |      |

1 The *hiragana* symbol は (ha) is also used for writing the particle wa.

2 The *hiragana* symbol へ (he) is also used for e ('to', 'towards').

3 This *hiragana* symbol is used for the object particle o only.

The 'voiced sounds' **ga, gi, gu** etc., **za, ji, zu** etc., **da, ji, zu** etc., and **ba, bi, bu** etc. (rows 3, 5, 7 and 10 of the table on page 8) are made by adding a *nigori* mark ("") to **ka, ki, ku** etc., **sa, shi, su** etc., **ta, chi, tsu** etc. and **ha, hi, fu** etc. respectively. (**Pa, pi, pu** etc. – row 11, page 8 – is made by adding a small circle to **ha, hi, fu** etc.)

Examples:

ながさき Nagasaki

ぎんざ Ginza (a main street in Tokyo)

だめ dame

ぶぶん bubun

Note that the long 'ō' syllable (ō, kō, sō etc.) is generally written 'ou', 'kou', 'sou', etc.

そう sō

じょうず jōzu

ほう hō

But there are a small number of exceptions:

おおきい ōkii

おいしい ōi

The 'double consonant' is written like this with a small **tsu**:

かった katta

まった matta

ちよっと chotto

Other combined syllables are as explained in the Introduction. Study now the examples below:

げいしゃ geisha

しゅじゅつ shujutsu

しゅうかん shūkan

おちゃ o-cha

いちにちじゅう ichinichijū

おばさん obasan

おばあさん obāsan

きょうと Kyōto

きゅうしゅう Kyūshū

あな ana

あんな anna

かた kata

かった katta

## Appendix 2

The small selection of *kanji* (Chinese characters) given below represents some of the more common ones the visitor is likely to see on the streets of Japan. Some of these may appear in *hiragana* as well. The words marked with an asterisk are in *katakana*:

|         |                              |
|---------|------------------------------|
| 駅       | (eki) station                |
| 地下鉄     | (chikatetsu) subway station  |
| 切符売場    | (kippu uriba) ticket office  |
| 改札口     | (kaisatsu guchi) ticket gate |
| 入口      | (iriguchi) entrance          |
| 出口      | (deguchi) exit               |
| 非常口     | (hijōguchi) emergency exit   |
| 押す      | (osu) push                   |
| 引く      | (hiku) pull                  |
| 中央口     | (chūō guchi) central exit    |
| 北口      | (kitaguchi) north exit       |
| 南口      | (minamiguchi) south exit     |
| 西口      | (nishiguchi) west exit       |
| 東口      | (higashiguchi) east exit     |
| コインロッカー | (koinrokka*) coin locker     |

|          |  |
|----------|--|
| 待合室      | (machiaishitsu) waiting room             |
| お手洗い     | (o-tearai) toilet                        |
| 便所       | (benjo) toilet                           |
| トイレ      | (toire*) toilet                          |
| 化粧室      | (keshōshitsu) powder room                |
| 男子用      | (danshiyō) men                           |
| 女子用      | (joshiyō) women                          |
| 使用中      | (shiyōchu) engaged                       |
| 故障中      | (koshōchū) out of order                  |
| 飲料水      | (inryōsui) drinking water                |
| タクシー 乗り場 | (takushi* noriba) taxi rank              |
| 駐車場      | (chūshajō) parking                       |
| 駐車禁止     | (chūsha kinshi) parking forbidden        |
| 土足厳禁     | (dosoku genkin) shoes strictly forbidden |
| 立入禁止     | (tachiiri kinshi) no entry               |
| 禁煙       | (kin'en) no smoking                      |
| 銀行       | (ginkō) bank                             |
| 郵便局      | (yūbinkyoku) post office                 |
| 医院       | (iin) doctor's surgery                   |
| 営業中      | (eigyōchū) open                          |
| 閉店       | (heiten) closed                          |



|     |                             |
|-----|-----------------------------|
| 案内  | (annai) information         |
| 受け付 | (uketsuke) reception        |
| ホテル | (hoteru*) hotel             |
| 旅館  | (ryokan) Japanese-style inn |
| 喫茶店 | (kissaten) coffee shop      |

### Picture Credits

Jacket (front): AA PHOTO LIBRARY: centre; CORBIS: Jack Fields bottom right and back cover; Sakamoto Photo Research Laboratory left; ROBERT HARDING PICTURE LIBRARY: centre above; GEOFF HOWARD: centre left above, centre right above, centre left and top of spine, centre right and bottom of spine; IMAGES COLOUR LIBRARY: Alex Sanders/Horizon bottom centre above; NEIL SETCHFIELD: bottom centre; POWER STOCK: ZEFA top right